

# On an octonionic construction of the groups of type $E_6$ and ${}^2E_6$

Yegor Stepanov



A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements of the  
Degree of

*Doctor of Philosophy*

2020



## Declaration

I, Yegor Stepanov, confirm that the research included within this thesis is my own work or that where it has been carried out in collaboration with, or supported by others, that this is duly acknowledged below and my contribution indicated. Previously published material is also acknowledged below.

I attest that I have exercised reasonable care to ensure that the work is original, and does not to the best of my knowledge break any UK law, infringe any third party's copyright or other Intellectual Property Right, or contain any confidential material.

I accept that the College has the right to use plagiarism detection software to check the electronic version of the thesis.

I confirm that this thesis has not been previously submitted for the award of a degree by this or any other university.

The copyright of this thesis rests with the author and no quotation from it or information derived from it may be published without the prior written consent of the author.

Signature: YEGOR STEPANOV    Date: 27<sup>th</sup> May, 2020

Details of collaboration and publications: parts of this work have been completed in collaboration with JOHN N. BRAY and ROBERT A. WILSON, and are published in the following paper:

- John N. Bray, Yegor Stepanov, Robert A. Wilson, "Octonions, Albert vectors and the group  $E_6(F)$ ", **arXiv:1906.08846**.

## Abstract

We present a uniform approach to the construction of the groups of type  $E_6$  over arbitrary fields without using Lie theory, in the spirit of Robert Wilson's 'The Finite Simple Groups'. Where possible, proofs are obtained from the basic principles, which minimises the number of dependencies, making our approach to the construction elementary and self-contained. In particular, we prove the simplicity of the groups of type  $E_6$  and illuminate some of the related geometry. The construction discussed in this thesis gives a simple description of the group generators and some of the subgroup structure. In the finite case our approach permits relatively straightforward computation of the group order. We also investigate the possibility of obtaining a similar construction for the groups of type  ${}^2E_6$ . In particular, we study a potential generating set as well as obtain some aspects of the subgroup structure.

## Acknowledgements

In the first place I wish to thank my supervisors, Robert Wilson and John Bray. I am grateful to Rob for the wisdom he shared with me, for his ability to shape ideas, and for warm and enlightening discussions. I likewise thank John for his patience, excellent guidance, extensive knowledge, and most importantly, for being a friend. I am also thankful to Leonard Soicher for his kindness, willingness to help, and for providing an alternative perspective on this thesis.

No less I wish to thank Lera, without whom this thesis would not have existed, and without whom I would have not been myself. To my mother Galina I am thankful for her love, support, and faith in me throughout my whole life.

I wish to thank Alex Fink, Katie Hale, Gabriella Caminotto, and my friends Dominic Carter, Alexander Luzgarev, and many others for their unconditional kindness and for being there for me.

Finally, I am grateful to my colleagues at the School of Mathematical Sciences for their friendliness and good sense of humour which made my time as a PhD student a most enjoyable one.

*I dwell in Possibility –  
A fairer House than Prose –  
More numerous of Windows –  
Superior – for Doors –*

*Of Chambers as the Cedars –  
Impregnable of eye –  
And for an everlasting Roof  
The Gambrels of the Sky –*

*Of Visitors – the fairest –  
For Occupation – This –  
The spreading wide my  
                    narrow Hands  
To gather Paradise –*

Emily Dickinson

# Contents

<b>Contents</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>1 Octonions</b>	<b>6</b>
1.1 Composition algebras . . . . .	6
1.1.1 Quadratic and Bilinear Forms . . . . .	6
1.1.2 Isometries and Witt's Lemma . . . . .	7
1.1.3 Definition of a composition algebra . . . . .	9
1.2 Conjugation and inverses . . . . .	11
1.3 Alternative laws and Moufang identities . . . . .	12
1.4 Octonion algebras . . . . .	13
1.5 Split octonion algebras . . . . .	15
1.6 A basis for the split octonions . . . . .	16
1.7 Centre of an octonion algebra . . . . .	18
1.8 Invertible $F$ -linear maps on $\mathbb{O}$ . . . . .	19
<b>2 Groups of type <math>E_6</math></b>	<b>21</b>
2.1 Albert vectors . . . . .	21
2.1.1 Albert space $\mathbb{J}$ . . . . .	21
2.1.2 Dickson–Freudenthal determinant and $SE_6(F)$ . . . . .	22
2.2 Some elements of $SE_6(F)$ . . . . .	23
2.3 The white points . . . . .	27
2.3.1 The mixed form and the white vectors . . . . .	27
2.3.2 Action of $SE_6(F)$ on white points . . . . .	29

2.3.3	The stabiliser of a white point . . . . .	35
2.4	Some related geometry . . . . .	44
2.4.1	The stabiliser in $\text{SE}_6(F)$ of $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . . . . .	45
2.4.2	Joint stabilisers of $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ and a white point . . . . .	48
2.5	Simplicity of $\text{E}_6(F)$ . . . . .	54
2.6	The case of a finite field . . . . .	56
2.7	Arbitrary octonion algebras . . . . .	59
<b>3</b>	<b>Groups of type <math>{}^2\text{E}_6</math></b>	<b>61</b>
3.1	Quadratic field extensions . . . . .	61
3.2	Spaces with two forms . . . . .	62
3.3	Hermitean form in $\mathbb{J}$ and the group ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ . . . . .	63
3.4	Some elements of ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ . . . . .	64
3.5	Action of ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ on white points . . . . .	69
3.5.1	The stabiliser of type 3 vector . . . . .	70
3.5.2	The stabiliser of type 1 vector . . . . .	73
3.6	The case of a finite field . . . . .	77
3.6.1	White vectors in $\mathbb{J}_8^C$ . . . . .	77
3.6.2	White vectors in $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{BC}$ . . . . .	80
<b>A:</b>	<b>Some properties of <math>\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)</math></b>	<b>83</b>
<b>B:</b>	<b><math>\Omega_4^+(F)</math></b>	<b>93</b>
<b>C:</b>	<b><math>\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)</math></b>	<b>99</b>
<b>D:</b>	<b>Magma code</b>	<b>102</b>
	<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>110</b>



# Introduction

One may think of the exceptional groups of Lie type as of the wonders of our world which are still very far from our understanding. Yet these groups can be found almost everywhere in contemporary mathematics and physics. Moreover, physicists have some high hopes that exceptional groups will somehow reveal themselves in the theory of quantum mechanics.

The history of the exceptional groups began roughly between the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. Elie Cartan (1869–1951) first completely classified simple Lie algebras, and then by determining the real forms of complex algebras he classified the simple real Lie algebras. A rigorous and highly readable historical account of this classification can be found in [Haw00]. Apart from the four infinite families of “classical” Lie algebras and Lie groups corresponding to them, there are five isolated ones, known to the world as  $G_2$ ,  $F_4$ ,  $E_6$ ,  $E_7$ , and  $E_8$ .

In this thesis we devote our interest to the construction of the groups of type  $E_6$ . This goes back more than a hundred years to the works of Leonard Eugene Dickson (1874–1954), who characterised  $E_6$  as a 27-dimensional group with an invariant cubic form [Dic01, Dic08]. Dickson also managed to write down a large number of group generators. He used 27 coordinates labelled  $x_i$ ,  $y_i$ , and  $z_{ij} = -z_{ji}$ , where  $i, j \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  and  $i \neq j$ . His group is defined as the stabiliser of a cubic form with 45 terms

$$\sum_{i \neq j} x_i y_j z_{ij} + \sum z_{ij} z_{kl} z_{mn}, \quad (1)$$

where the second sum is taken over all partitions  $\{\{i, j\}, \{k, l\}, \{m, n\}\}$  of the index set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ , ordered so that  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ i & j & k & l & m & n \end{pmatrix}$  is an even permutation.

In 1955 Claude Chevalley (1909–1984) obtained a uniform construction of what are now known as Chevalley groups [Che55]. Chevalley’s construction included  $E_6$

albeit he constructs the 78-dimensional representation whereas Dickson obtained the 27-dimensional representation, which is the minimal one.

There was another major breakthrough following Dickson's construction of  $E_6$ : in 1932 a new subatomic particle called neutron was discovered, which indicated the need for a new algebraic underpinning of quantum mechanics. In the same year a German physicist Pascual Jordan<sup>1</sup> (1902–1980) introduced Jordan algebras as a tool which was supposed to illuminate the behaviour of observable particles in quantum mechanics.

In 1934, Pascual Jordan, John von Neumann (1903–1957), and Eugene Wigner (1902–1995) introduced Jordan algebras and octonions into physics [JNW34]. Although their attempt to formulate a new quantum mechanics was unsuccessful, Jordan algebras turned out to have astonishing connections with many areas of mathematics. A by-product of physical investigation was the discovery of the 27-dimensional exceptional Jordan algebra also known as the Albert algebra, named after Abraham Adrian Albert (1905–1972).

Although abandoned by physicists, the Albert algebra turned out to be of high interest to mathematicians. This 27-dimensional algebra consists of  $3 \times 3$  Hermitian matrices written over octonions, with the multiplication given by

$$X \circ Y = \frac{1}{2}(XY + YX). \quad (2)$$

Hans Freudenthal (1905–1990) showed that the stabiliser of a certain cubic form on this 27-dimensional space is a group of type  $E_6$  [Fre85]. George Seligman (born 1927) proved that the automorphism group of a split Albert algebra over any field  $F$  is isomorphic to the Chevalley group  $F_4(F)$  [Sel81]. Nathan Jacobson (1910–1999), inspired by the works of Dickson and Chevalley, studied the automorphism group of the Albert algebra, and the stabiliser of the determinant over the fields of characteristic not 2 or 3 in the series of papers [Jac59, Jac60, Jac61]. For instance, he proved that if an Albert algebra contains nilpotent elements, then the automorphism group is simple. It must have been implicit that the determinant of the elements in the Albert algebra

---

<sup>1</sup>Naming the first-born son Pascual was a family tradition. Furthermore, while in English 'Jordan' is pronounced with the first sound being the same as in the word 'judge', in German the first sound is the same as in 'yolk'.

is essentially the same as Dickson’s cubic form, although Jacobson does not refer to Dickson. Although cases of characteristic 2 and 3 were of no problem to Dickson, they were still problematic in Jacobson’s construction.

Michael Aschbacher (born 1944) also addresses the construction of the groups of type  $E_6$  without mentioning the Albert algebra or octonions at all. Though of fundamental importance, Aschbacher’s construction is of rather abstract nature and some of the results need to be investigated in detail. Thus, some of the structural questions such as the possible shape of a maximal subgroup require further research.

In his famous book, ‘The Finite Simple Groups’ [Wil09], and also in subsequent preprint [Wil13], Robert Arnott Wilson (born 1958) sketches the construction of the finite simple groups  $F_4(q)$ ,  $E_6(q)$ , and  ${}^2E_6(q)$ . The purpose of this thesis is, having this sketch as a basis, to fill in the major gaps and provide a complete and self-contained construction of the groups of type  $E_6$ , and also investigate the possibility to adopt this approach to the groups of type  ${}^2E_6$  over an arbitrary field.

In the late 1980s the problem of classifying maximal subgroups came into prominence. One of the most notable examples is Kay Magaard’s (1962–2018) unpublished thesis [Mag90], which deals with the maximal subgroups of finite simple groups  $F_4(q)$  where the characteristic is not 2 or 3. The series of papers by Aschbacher [Asc87, Asc88, Asc90a, Asc90b] addresses the investigation of the maximal subgroups of  $E_6$ . It turns out that the 27-dimensional representation of the generic cover reveals much more structure rather than the standard 78-dimensional representation on the Lie algebra. However, Aschbacher does not provide a complete list of maximal subgroups, which indicates a need for a concrete and easy-to-use construction, which can help to understand the subgroup structure better.

In this thesis we present a complete construction of the group  $E_6$  over an arbitrary field  $F$  and investigate some of the structural aspects of the obtained 27-dimensional representation. We also come close to obtaining a similar construction for the group  ${}^2E_6$ .

# Chapter 1

## Octonions

In this chapter we discuss some background material on octonion algebras. The main references here are [SV00] and [Sch66]. Although the statement of Proposition 1.5.2 is mentioned in the literature, it is often given without proper justification, so we prove it from the first principles to close this gap.

### 1.1 Composition algebras

#### 1.1.1 Quadratic and Bilinear Forms

Let  $V$  be a vector space over a field  $F$ . We define a *quadratic form*  $Q$  on  $V$  to be a map  $Q : V \rightarrow F$  such that

- (i)  $Q(\lambda v) = \lambda^2 Q(v)$  for all  $v \in V$  and  $\lambda \in F$ ;
- (ii) the form  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : V \times V \rightarrow K$ , defined by

$$\langle u, v \rangle = Q(u + v) - Q(u) - Q(v), \quad (1.1)$$

is bilinear. We usually refer to  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  as *the polar form of  $Q$* .

From (1.1) we readily see that the form  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is symmetric, i.e.  $\langle u, v \rangle = \langle v, u \rangle$  for all  $u, v \in V$ . We also observe that for all  $v \in V$  we have

$$\langle v, v \rangle = 2Q(v), \quad (1.2)$$

It follows that in case  $\text{char}(F) = 2$  we get  $\langle v, v \rangle = 0$  for all  $v$ , and the quadratic form carries strictly more information than the associated bilinear form. In all other characteristics, however, we get  $Q(v) = \frac{1}{2}\langle v, v \rangle$ .

We say that two non-zero vectors  $u, v \in V$  are *orthogonal*, if  $\langle u, v \rangle = 0$ . As already mentioned, this relation is symmetric. Now if  $U$  is any subspace of  $V$  (and even if it is just a subset), we define its *orthogonal complement*  $U^\perp$  to be

$$U^\perp = \{ v \in V \mid \langle u, v \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } u \in U \}. \quad (1.3)$$

A non-zero vector  $v \in V$  is called *isotropic* if  $Q(v) = 0$ , otherwise  $v$  is *anisotropic*. Sometimes we also say that  $Q(v)$  is the *norm* of  $v$ . Now, the quadratic form  $Q$  is isotropic if there exists an isotropic vector in  $V$ . The *radical* of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is  $V^\perp$ , and  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  is *non-degenerate* if the radical is trivial, or, otherwise speaking, if

$$\langle v, u \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } u \in V \text{ implies that } v = 0. \quad (1.4)$$

Similarly, the *radical* of  $Q$  is the subset of the radical of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , consisting of isotropic vectors, i.e.

$$\text{rad}_V(Q) = \{ v \in V \mid \langle v, u \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } u \in V, Q(v) = 0 \}. \quad (1.5)$$

If the radical of the form  $Q$  is trivial, then  $Q$  is said to be *non-singular*. Throughout this thesis we will be mostly interested in non-singular quadratic and non-degenerate bilinear forms. If  $U$  is a subspace of  $V$  and the restriction of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  on  $U$  is non-degenerate, then  $V = U \oplus U^\perp$ , and the restriction of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  on  $U^\perp$  is also non-degenerate. A subspace  $U$  of  $V$  consisting entirely of isotropic vectors is called *totally isotropic*.

### 1.1.2 Isometries and Witt's Lemma

Let  $V_1, V_2$  be vector spaces over fields  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  respectively, with non-singular quadratic forms  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$ . Denote by  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_i$  the polar form of  $Q_i$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ). Suppose  $\sigma : F_1 \rightarrow F_2$  is a field isomorphism. A map  $s : V_1 \rightarrow V_2$ , satisfying

$$Q_2(v^s) = \lambda_s Q_1(v)^\sigma \quad (v \in V_1), \quad (1.6)$$

where  $\lambda_s \in F_2^\times$ , is called a  $\sigma$ -similarity. The scalar  $\lambda_s$  is known as the *multiplier* of  $s$ . Using the definition of polar form, we obtain  $\langle u^s, v^s \rangle_2 = \lambda_s \langle u, v \rangle_1^\sigma$ . If  $\lambda_s = 1$ , then  $s$  is called a  $\sigma$ -isometry. In the case when a  $\sigma$ -similarity (or  $\sigma$ -isometry) between two spaces  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  exists, we say that  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  are  $\sigma$ -similar (or  $\sigma$ -isometric). If  $\sigma$  is the identity map, then  $\sigma$ -similarity (or  $\sigma$ -isometry) is simply called *similarity* (or *isometry*).

A key result about isometries, which also plays an important rôle in the study of the geometry of spaces with quadratic forms, is Witt's Lemma (also known as Witt's Theorem).

**Theorem 1.1.1** (Witt's Lemma). *If  $V_1, V_2$  are two  $\sigma$ -isometric vector spaces of finite dimension with non-singular quadratic forms  $Q_1$  on  $V_1$  and  $Q_2$  on  $V_2$ , then every  $\sigma$ -isometry between a subspace of  $V_1$  and a subspace of  $V_2$  extends to a  $\sigma$ -isometry between  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ .*

If  $V$  is a vector space over  $F$  with a non-singular quadratic form  $Q$ , then an isometry from  $V$  onto itself is called an *orthogonal transformation* of  $V$  with respect to  $Q$ . These orthogonal transformations form the (*general*) *orthogonal group*  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$ . Now suppose  $s : V \rightarrow V$  is an invertible linear transformation such that  $Q(v^s) = Q(v)$  for all  $v \in V$  (and thus  $\langle u^s, v^s \rangle = \langle u, v \rangle$  for all  $u, v \in V$ ). Denote  $n = \dim_F(V)$  and pick a basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$ . Then with respect to  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $s$  can be represented by an  $n \times n$  matrix  $[s]_{\mathcal{B}}$ . The determinant of the resulting matrix is independent of the choice of basis, so there is a group homomorphism  $\det : \text{GO}(V, Q) \rightarrow F^\times$ . Orthogonal transformations have determinant  $\pm 1$ . In case of characteristic 2 we define the *quasideterminant*  $\text{qdet} : \text{GO}(V, Q) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_2$  to be the map

$$\text{qdet} : g \mapsto \dim_F(\text{Im}(\text{id} - g)) \bmod 2. \quad (1.7)$$

The subgroup  $\text{SO}(V, Q)$  of  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  is the kernel of the (quasi-)determinant map. The group  $\text{SO}(V, Q)$  is referred to as *special orthogonal group* or *rotation group* of  $V$  with respect to  $Q$ .

Note that not every element of  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  arises as a rotation. For an anisotropic

vector  $v \in V$  define  $r_v$  to be

$$r_v : u \mapsto u - \frac{\langle u, v \rangle}{Q(v)} v \quad (u \in V). \quad (1.8)$$

If the characteristic is not 2, then  $r_v$  is the *reflexion* in (the hyperplane orthogonal to)  $v$ . If  $\text{char}(K) = 2$ , then  $r_v$  is the *orthogonal transvection* with centre  $v$ . For simplicity we use the word ‘reflexion’ in all cases.

We define the *spinor norm* to be a homomorphism  $\text{GO}(V, Q) \rightarrow F^\times / (F^\times)^2$ , where  $F^\times / (F^\times)^2$  is the *multiplicative group modulo squares* of  $F$ . The aforementioned homomorphism is defined as follows. Any element of  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  arising as a reflexion in  $v$  is sent to the value  $Q(v)$  modulo  $(F^\times)^2$ . This extends to a well-defined homomorphism. The subgroup  $\Omega(V, Q)$  of  $\text{SO}(V, Q)$  is obtained as the kernel of spinor norm.

Witt’s Lemma implies that all maximal totally isotropic subspaces of  $V$  (with respect to  $Q$ ) have the same dimension, which is called the *Witt index* of  $Q$ . When  $Q$  is non-singular and  $V$  is finite-dimensional, Witt index of  $Q$  can be at most  $\frac{1}{2} \dim_F(V)$ . Moreover, the isometry group  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  acts transitively on the set of maximal totally isotropic subspaces.

### 1.1.3 Definition of a composition algebra

**Definition 1.1.2.** A composition algebra  $C = C_F$  over a field  $F$  is a (not necessarily associative) unital algebra over  $F$  which admits a non-singular quadratic form  $N : C \rightarrow F$  such that the polar form of  $N$  is non-degenerate and

$$N(xy) = N(x)N(y) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in C. \quad (1.9)$$

The quadratic form  $N$  on  $C$  is usually called the *norm* of  $C$ , and its polar form is referred to as the *inner product*. We also denote the identity element as  $1_C$ .

Let  $D$  be a linear subspace of  $C$  such that the restriction of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  on  $D$  is non-degenerate. If  $D$  is closed under multiplication and contains  $1_C$ , then it is called a *subalgebra* of  $C$ .

Let  $C_1, C_2$  be two composition algebras over fields  $F_1, F_2$  respectively and suppose  $\sigma : F_1 \rightarrow F_2$  is a field isomorphism. A bijective  $\sigma$ -linear transformation  $s : C_1 \rightarrow C_2$  is

called a  $\sigma$ -isomorphism, if

$$(xy)^s = x^s y^s \text{ for all } x, y \in C_1. \quad (1.10)$$

For simplicity, if  $F_1 = F_2$  and  $\sigma = \text{id}$ , then  $s$  is called an *isomorphism*.

Definition 1.1.2 allows us to derive a number of useful equations. First of all, we find that

$$N(x) = N(1_C \cdot x) = N(1_C)N(x)$$

for all  $x \in C$ , so it follows that

$$N(1_C) = 1. \quad (1.11)$$

Next, for any  $x_1, x_2, y \in C$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} N(x_1y + x_2y) &= N((x_1 + x_2)y) = N(x_1 + x_2)N(y) \\ &= (N(x_1) + N(x_2) + \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle)N(y). \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} N(x_1y + x_2y) &= N(x_1y) + N(x_2y) + \langle x_1y, x_2y \rangle \\ &= N(x_1)N(y) + N(x_2)N(y) + \langle x_1y, x_2y \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$\langle x_1y, x_2y \rangle = \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle N(y) \quad (1.12)$$

for all  $x_1, x_2, y \in C$ . Similarly, we obtain

$$\langle xy_1, xy_2 \rangle = N(x) \langle y_1, y_2 \rangle \quad (1.13)$$

for all  $x, y_1, y_2 \in C$ . Replacing  $y$  by  $y_1 + y_2$  in (1.12), we obtain

$$\langle x_1y_1, x_2y_2 \rangle + \langle x_1y_2, x_2y_1 \rangle = \langle x_1, x_2 \rangle \langle y_1, y_2 \rangle \quad (1.14)$$

for all  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2 \in C$ .

Any composition algebra is quadratic, that is, every element satisfies a certain quadratic equation.



**Proposition 1.1.3.** *Every element  $x$  of a composition algebra  $C$  satisfies the following equation:*

$$x^2 - \langle x, 1_C \rangle x + N(x) \cdot 1_C = 0. \quad (1.15)$$

*In the case when  $x$  is not a scalar multiple of  $1_C$ , this is the minimal equation for  $x$ . For all  $x, y \in C$  we have*

$$xy + yx - \langle x, 1_C \rangle y - \langle y, 1_C \rangle x + \langle x, y \rangle \cdot 1_C = 0. \quad (1.16)$$

For example, if  $x, y$  are orthogonal to  $1_C$  and  $\langle x, y \rangle = 0$ , then  $xy = -yx$ , but most importantly we have the following corollary.

**Corollary 1.1.4.** *The norm  $N$  in a composition algebra  $C$  is uniquely determined by the algebra structure. Any  $\sigma$ -isomorphism of composition algebras is always a  $\sigma$ -isometry.*

Any composition algebra is power associative, i.e. for all  $x \in C$  and  $i, j \geq 1$ , we have

$$x^i x^j = x^{i+j}. \quad (1.17)$$

## 1.2 Conjugation and inverses

We define *conjugation* in a composition algebra  $C$  to be the mapping  $\bar{\phantom{x}} : C \rightarrow C$  defined by

$$\bar{x} = \langle x, 1_C \rangle \cdot 1_C - x \quad (x \in C). \quad (1.18)$$

Note that geometrically speaking, the map  $x \mapsto \bar{x}$  is  $-r_{1_C}$ , where  $r_{1_C}$  is the reflexion in  $1_C$ . We call  $\bar{x}$  the *conjugate* of  $x$ . The following lemma summarises the properties of  $\bar{\phantom{x}}$  related to conjugation.

**Lemma 1.2.1.** *For all  $x, y \in C$  the following identities hold:*

- (i)  $x\bar{x} = \bar{x}x = N(x) \cdot 1_C$ ,
- (ii)  $\overline{\bar{x}} = x$ ,
- (iii)  $\overline{\bar{x}} = x$ ,
- (iv)  $\overline{x + y} = \bar{x} + \bar{y}$ ,

$$(v) \ N(x) = N(\bar{x}),$$

$$(vi) \ \langle x, y \rangle = \langle \bar{x}, \bar{y} \rangle.$$

Furthermore, we have the following important properties.

**Lemma 1.2.2.** *For all  $x, y, z \in C$  the following identities hold:*

$$(i) \ x(\bar{x}y) = N(x)y,$$

$$(ii) \ (x\bar{y})y = N(y)x,$$

$$(iii) \ x(\bar{y}z) + y(\bar{x}z) = \langle x, y \rangle \cdot z,$$

$$(iv) \ (x\bar{y})z + (x\bar{z})y = x \cdot \langle y, z \rangle.$$

If for an element  $x \in C$  we have  $N(x) \neq 0$ , then  $x$  is said to be *invertible*. If this is the case, then the *inverse* of  $x$  is

$$x^{-1} = N(x)^{-1}\bar{x}. \quad (1.19)$$

**Lemma 1.2.3.** *If  $x, y \in C$  are invertible, then*

$$(xy)^{-1} = y^{-1}x^{-1}. \quad (1.20)$$

### 1.3 Alternative laws and Moufang identities

Composition algebras are not necessarily associative, but there are certain results which can help us with the bracketing.

**Lemma 1.3.1** (Moufang Identities). *For all  $x, y, z \in C$ , the following identities hold:*

$$\begin{aligned} x((yz)x) &= (xy)(zx), \\ x(y(zy)) &= ((xy)z)y, \\ (x(yx))z &= x(y(xz)). \end{aligned} \quad (1.21)$$

This helps us to conclude that any composition algebra  $C$  is *alternative*. That is, for every element  $x \in C$  the left-multiplication by  $x$  commutes with right-multiplication by  $x$ .

**Lemma 1.3.2** (Alternative Laws). *For all  $x, y \in C$  the following are true:*

$$\begin{aligned}(xx)y &= x(xy), \\ (yx)x &= y(xx), \\ (xy)x &= x(yx).\end{aligned}\tag{1.22}$$

**Theorem 1.3.3** (Artin). *The subalgebra generated by any two elements of an alternative algebra is always associative.*

## 1.4 Octonion algebras

The most important structural result about composition algebras is the following theorem (this is Theorem 1.6.2 in [SV00]).

**Theorem 1.4.1.** *The possible dimensions of a composition algebra are 1, 2, 4, and 8. Composition algebras of dimension 1 only occur if the characteristic of the field is not 2. Composition algebras of dimension 1 and 2 are associative and commutative. Those of dimension 4 are associative but not commutative, and those of dimension 8 are neither associative nor commutative.*

In this thesis we will be mostly interested in the 8-dimensional composition algebras. To emphasise their importance in our work, we use a separate name for them.

**Definition 1.4.2.** *Let  $F$  be any field. An octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$  is an 8-dimensional composition algebra, i.e. it admits a norm defined as a quadratic form  $N : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow F$  such that the polar form of  $N$  is non-degenerate and  $N(xy) = N(x)N(y)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ .*

The elements of  $\mathbb{O}$  are called the *octonions*. The multiplicative identity in  $\mathbb{O}$  is denoted  $1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , and for simplicity we sometimes omit the subscript. The polar form of  $N$  is denoted by  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  as usual. Define the *trace* of an octonion to be the inner product

$$T(x) = \langle x, 1_{\mathbb{O}} \rangle.\tag{1.23}$$

From 1.18 it is easy to see that

$$T(x) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} = x + \bar{x}.\tag{1.24}$$

Although we define trace through the inner product, using Lemma 1.2.1 we can derive the following important relation.

**Lemma 1.4.3.** *For all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ , the following identity holds:*

$$\langle x, y \rangle = T(x\bar{y}). \quad (1.25)$$

*Proof.* By Lemma 1.2.1,  $N(x) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} = x\bar{x}$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ . Polarising  $N$  as usual, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x, y \rangle \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} &= N(x+y) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} - N(x) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} - N(y) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} \\ &= (x+y)(\bar{x} + \bar{y}) - x\bar{x} - y\bar{y} = x\bar{y} + y\bar{x} = T(x\bar{y}) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}. \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

By Proposition 1.1.3, an arbitrary element  $x \in \mathbb{O}$  satisfies the equation

$$x^2 - T(x) \cdot x + N(x) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} = 0. \quad (1.26)$$

Finally, as we know, any octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O}$  is neither associative nor commutative. However, we do have the following.

**Lemma 1.4.4.** *If  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{O}$ , then  $T(xy) = T(yx)$  and  $T(x(yz)) = T((xy)z)$ .*

Note that although trace is 3-associative, it is not possible in this case to derive generalised associativity for the trace.

**Lemma 1.4.5.** *For all non-zero  $C \in \mathbb{O}$  the map  $\mathbb{O} \rightarrow F$ ,  $x \mapsto T(Cx)$  is onto.*

*Proof.* This is an  $F$ -linear map, so if it is not surjective, then it is a zero map. But if  $T(Cx) = \langle C, \bar{x} \rangle = 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ , then  $C = 0$  (a contradiction), since the map  $x \mapsto \bar{x}$  is surjective.  $\square$

Further in this thesis we will be interested in a certain class of subalgebras of  $\mathbb{O}$ . We say that a subalgebra  $\mathbb{S}$  of  $\mathbb{O}$  is *sociable*, if for any  $x, y \in \mathbb{S}$  and any  $z \in \mathbb{O}$ ,  $x(zy) = (xz)y$ .

## 1.5 Split octonion algebras

There is an important dichotomy with respect to the structure of an octonion algebra: either  $\mathbb{O}$  is a division algebra or there exists an isotropic octonion. In the latter case  $\mathbb{O}$  is called a *split octonion algebra*.

If  $\mathbb{O}$  is split, then the Witt index of  $N$  is 4 (section 1.8 in [SV00]). Moreover, we have the following result (Theorem 1.8.1 in [SV00]).

**Theorem 1.5.1.** *Over any given field  $F$  there is a unique split octonion algebra, up to isomorphism.*

It turns out that any isotropic octonion left- and right-annihilates a 4-dimensional subspace of a split octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O}$ .

**Proposition 1.5.2.** *Let  $\mathbb{O}$  be a split octonion algebra. Then for any isotropic  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ , the following is true:*

$$\dim_F(\mathbb{O}x) = \dim_F(x\mathbb{O}) = 4. \quad (1.27)$$

Moreover,  $\mathbb{O}x$  is the set of octonions that are right-annihilated by  $\bar{x}$ , and  $x\mathbb{O}$  is the set of octonions that are left-annihilated by  $\bar{x}$ .

*Proof.* We prove the statement for right multiplication by  $x$ . The proof for left multiplication is essentially the same. The map

$$\begin{aligned} R_x : \mathbb{O} &\rightarrow \mathbb{O} \\ y &\mapsto yx \end{aligned}$$

is an  $F$ -linear map with  $\text{Im}(R_x) = \mathbb{O}x$ , which is a totally isotropic subspace of  $\mathbb{O}$ . Indeed,  $(yx)(\bar{x}\bar{y}) = y(x\bar{x})\bar{y} = 0$  for any  $y \in \mathbb{O}$ . Since  $N$  is non-singular and its polar form is non-degenerate, we conclude that  $\dim_F(\mathbb{O}x) \leq 4$ .

If  $x \neq 0$  and  $yx = 0$ , then  $y$  is isotropic for if that were not the case, we would get  $x = y^{-1}(yx) = y^{-1} \cdot 0 = 0$ , a contradiction. It follows that  $\dim_F(\ker(R_x)) \leq 4$ . The Rank–Nullity theorem implies that  $\dim_F(\mathbb{O}x) = \dim_F(\ker(R_x)) = 4$ .  $\square$

## 1.6 A basis for the split octonions

In this section we assume that  $\mathbb{O}$  is a split octonion algebra. Theorem 1.5.1 allows us to choose a basis for  $\mathbb{O}$  and to use it further. Otherwise speaking, we can ‘redefine’ split octonion algebras in the following way.

**Definition 1.6.1.** *If  $F$  is any field, then the split octonion algebra over  $F$  is defined as an 8-dimensional vector space  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$  with basis  $\{e_i \mid i \in \pm I\}$ , where  $I = \{0, 1, \omega, \bar{\omega}\}$ ,  $\pm I = \{\pm 0, \pm 1, \pm \omega, \pm \bar{\omega}\}$  and bilinear multiplication given by the following table.*

	$e_{-1}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$e_{\omega}$	$e_0$	$e_{-0}$	$e_{-\omega}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$e_1$
$e_{-1}$	0	0	0	0	$e_{-1}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$-e_{\omega}$	$-e_0$
$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	0	0	$-e_{-1}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	0	0	$-e_{-0}$	$e_{-\omega}$
$e_{\omega}$	0	$e_{-1}$	0	$e_{\omega}$	0	$-e_{-0}$	0	$-e_{-\bar{\omega}}$
$e_0$	$e_{-1}$	0	0	$e_0$	0	$e_{-\omega}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	0
$e_{-0}$	0	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$e_{\omega}$	0	$e_{-0}$	0	0	$e_1$
$e_{-\omega}$	$-e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	0	$-e_0$	0	$e_{-\omega}$	0	$e_1$	0
$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$e_{\omega}$	$-e_0$	0	0	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$-e_1$	0	0
$e_1$	$-e_{-0}$	$-e_{-\omega}$	$e_{-\bar{\omega}}$	$e_1$	0	0	0	0

In other words, we get

- (i)  $e_1 e_{\omega} = -e_{\omega} e_1 = e_{-\omega}$ ;
- (ii)  $e_1 e_0 = e_{-0} e_1 = e_1$ ;
- (iii)  $e_{-1} e_1 = -e_0$  and  $e_0 e_0 = e_0$ ;

and images under negating all subscripts (including 0), and multiplying all subscripts by  $\omega$ , where  $\omega^2 = \bar{\omega}$  and  $\omega \bar{\omega} = 1$ . All other products of basis vectors are 0. Thus,  $e_0$  and  $e_{-0}$  are orthogonal idempotents with  $e_0 + e_{-0} = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ . Now, if  $x = \sum_{i \in \pm I} \lambda_i e_i$ , then the norm of  $x$  can be defined in the following way:

$$N(x) = \lambda_{-1} \lambda_1 + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}} \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{\omega} \lambda_{-\omega} + \lambda_0 \lambda_{-0}. \quad (1.28)$$

**Lemma 1.6.2.** *The norm  $N$  defined in (1.28) is multiplicative.*

*Proof.* Let  $x = \sum_{i \in \pm I} \lambda_i e_i$  and  $y = \sum_{i \in \pm I} \mu_i e_i$  be two arbitrary elements of  $\mathbb{O}$ . Their product is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
x \cdot y = & (\lambda_{-1}\mu_{-0} - \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{\omega} + \lambda_{\omega}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_0\mu_{-1}) \cdot e_{-1} \\
& + (\lambda_{-1}\mu_{-\omega} + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_0 + \lambda_{-0}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-1}) \cdot e_{\bar{\omega}} \\
& + (\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-1} + \lambda_{-1}\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{-0}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{\omega}\mu_0) \cdot e_{\omega} \\
& + (\lambda_0\mu_0 - \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-1}\mu_1) \cdot e_0 \\
& + (\lambda_{-0}\mu_{-0} - \lambda_1\mu_{-1} - \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega}) \cdot e_{-0} \\
& + (\lambda_0\mu_{-\omega} - \lambda_1\mu_{\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-0} + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_1) \cdot e_{-\omega} \\
& + (\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-0} + \lambda_1\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{\omega}\mu_1 + \lambda_0\mu_{-\bar{\omega}}) \cdot e_{-\bar{\omega}} \\
& + (\lambda_{-0}\mu_1 + \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\omega} + \lambda_1\mu_0) \cdot e_1.
\end{aligned}$$

From this it is straightforward to derive

$$\begin{aligned}
N(x \cdot y) = & (\lambda_{-1}\mu_{-0} - \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{\omega} + \lambda_{\omega}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_0\mu_{-1}) \cdot (\lambda_{-0}\mu_1 + \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\omega} + \lambda_1\mu_0) \\
& + (\lambda_{-1}\mu_{-\omega} + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_0 + \lambda_{-0}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-1}) \cdot (\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-0} + \lambda_1\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{\omega}\mu_1 + \lambda_0\mu_{-\bar{\omega}}) \\
& + (\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-1} + \lambda_{-0}\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{-1}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{\omega}\mu_0) \cdot (\lambda_0\mu_{-\omega} - \lambda_1\mu_{\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{-0} + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_1) \\
& + (\lambda_0\mu_0 - \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{\omega} - \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{-1}\mu_1) \cdot (\lambda_{-0}\mu_{-0} - \lambda_1\mu_{-1} - \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} - \lambda_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega}) \\
= & \lambda_{-1}\lambda_1 \cdot (\mu_{-0}\mu_0 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0}) \\
& + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\lambda_{\bar{\omega}} \cdot (\mu_{-0}\mu_0 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0}) \\
& + \lambda_{\omega}\lambda_{-\omega} \cdot (\mu_{-0}\mu_0 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0}) \\
& + \lambda_0\lambda_{-0} \cdot (\mu_{-0}\mu_0 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0}) \\
= & (\lambda_{-1}\lambda_1 + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{\omega}\lambda_{-\omega} + \lambda_0\lambda_{-0}) \cdot (\mu_{-1}\mu_1 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0}) \\
= & N(x) \cdot N(y). \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\mathbb{O}$  is indeed a composition algebra. Let  $x$  and  $y$  be the same as in Lemma 1.6.2. We find

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle x, y \rangle = & N(x + y) - N(x) - N(y) \\
= & (\lambda_{-1} + \mu_{-1}) \cdot (\lambda_1 + \mu_1) + (\lambda_{\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}) \cdot (\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{-\bar{\omega}}) \\
& + (\lambda_{\omega} + \mu_{\omega}) \cdot (\lambda_{-\omega} + \mu_{-\omega}) + (\lambda_0 + \mu_0) \cdot (\lambda_{-0} + \mu_{-0}) \\
& - (\lambda_{-1}\lambda_1 + \lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\lambda_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{\omega}\lambda_{-\omega} + \lambda_0\lambda_{-0}) \\
& - (\mu_{-1}\mu_1 + \mu_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \mu_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \mu_0\mu_{-0})
\end{aligned} \tag{1.29}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (\lambda_{-1}\mu_1 + \lambda_1\mu_{-1}) + (\lambda_{\bar{\omega}}\mu_{-\bar{\omega}} + \lambda_{-\bar{\omega}}\mu_{\bar{\omega}}) \\
&+ (\lambda_{\omega}\mu_{-\omega} + \lambda_{-\omega}\mu_{\omega}) + (\lambda_0\mu_{-0} + \lambda_{-0}\mu_0).
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the trace of  $x$  becomes

$$T(x) = \langle x, 1_{\mathbb{O}} \rangle = \lambda_0 + \lambda_{-0}. \quad (1.30)$$

Note that  $N(e_i) = 0$  for  $i \neq \pm 0$ , so  $\mathbb{O}$  is indeed a split octonion algebra. Finally, the involution  $x \mapsto \bar{x}$  is the extension by linearity of

$$e_i \mapsto -e_i \ (i \neq \pm 0), \ e_0 \leftrightarrow e_{-0}. \quad (1.31)$$

Finally, now that we have chosen a basis for  $\mathbb{O}$ , we can show that although by Lemma 1.4.4 the trace is 3-associative, it is impossible to derive the generalised associativity. Indeed, for example,

$$\begin{aligned}
T((e_1 e_{-\bar{\omega}})(e_{-\omega} e_{-1})e_{-1}) &= 0, \\
T(e_1(e_{-\bar{\omega}}(e_{-\omega} e_{-1})e_{-1})) &= -1.
\end{aligned}$$

## 1.7 Centre of an octonion algebra

We define the centre of an octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O}$  as

$$Z(\mathbb{O}) = \{c \in \mathbb{O} \mid cx = xc \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{O}\}. \quad (1.32)$$

In the literature, for example, in [Sch66], it is sometimes required that central elements also “associate” with all other elements. We do not require this in our definition, however, it will be obvious that we have this property free of charge.

**Proposition 1.7.1.** *The centre of an octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$  is  $F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ .*

This is essentially Proposition 1.9.1 in [SV00], however, we need to emphasise that in the proof of this proposition the following result is used without mention.

**Lemma 1.7.2.** *Let  $K$  be an extension field of  $F$  and let  $A$  be an  $F$ -algebra with centre  $Z(A)$ . Then  $Z(A \otimes_F K) = Z(A) \otimes_F K$ .*



*Proof.* The proof is straightforward. Pick an arbitrary element  $z = \sum_i (a_i \otimes e_i)$  in  $Z(A \otimes_F K)$ . Here  $a_i \in A$  and we may assume that the elements  $e_i \in K$  are linearly independent, i.e. they form (part of) a basis for  $K$ . Since  $z$  is central, in particular it must commute with the elements of the form  $a \otimes 1$ . This means

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= z(a \otimes 1) - (a \otimes 1)z = \sum_i ((a_i a) \otimes e_i) - \sum_i ((a a_i) \otimes e_i) \\ &= \sum_i ((a_i a - a a_i) \otimes e_i). \end{aligned}$$

This holds if and only if  $a_i a = a a_i$ , i.e.  $a_i \in Z(A)$ . □

Therefore, any octonion algebra is central, i.e.  $Z(\mathbb{O}_F) = F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , and it follows from Proposition 1.7.1 that central elements “associate” with all other elements.

**Proposition 1.7.3.** *If an octonion  $u \in \mathbb{O}$  satisfies*

$$(xy)u = x(yu) \tag{1.33}$$

*for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ , then  $u \in F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ . Condition (1.33) is equivalent to the condition  $(xu)y = x(uy)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ , and also to  $(ux)y = u(xy)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ .*

**Corollary 1.7.4.** *Suppose that  $u \in \mathbb{O}$  is an invertible octonion. Then*

$$(A\bar{u})(uB) = N(u)AB \tag{1.34}$$

*holds for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$  if and only if  $u \in F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ .*

*Proof.* Proposition 1.7.3 tells us that if  $(xu)y = x(uy)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ , then  $u \in F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ . Now put  $x = A\bar{u}$  and  $y = B$ ; using this together with the alternative laws, we get the result.

Conversely, if  $u \in F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , then obviously the statement holds. □

## 1.8 Invertible $F$ -linear maps on $\mathbb{O}$

Finally, we prove two technical lemmas about invertible  $F$ -linear maps on  $\mathbb{O}$ . These lemmas will be useful in our future constructions. First, we show that no such maps

can change the order of the octonion product.

**Lemma 1.8.1.** *There are no invertible  $F$ -linear maps  $\phi, \psi : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  such that for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$  it is true that  $AB = (B\psi)(A\phi)$ .*

*Proof.* For the sake of finding a contradiction, suppose that  $\phi, \psi : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  are invertible  $F$ -linear maps such that the identity  $AB = (B\psi)(A\phi)$  holds for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . In particular, substituting  $A = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , we get  $B = (B\psi)u$  for all  $B \in \mathbb{O}$ , where  $u = 1\phi$ , so  $B\psi = Bu^{-1}$  for all  $B \in \mathbb{O}$ , which means that the map  $\psi$  is right multiplication by  $u^{-1}$ . Note that the existence of  $u^{-1}$  follows from the invertibility of the map  $\psi$ . Thus, our identity has the form  $AB = (Bu^{-1})(A\phi)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . We can substitute  $B = u$  which immediately gives us  $A\phi = Au$  for all  $A \in \mathbb{O}$ , so the map  $\phi$  is right multiplication by  $u$ . Finally, we get  $AB = (Bu^{-1})(Au)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$  and specifically for  $B = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  we get  $A = u^{-1}(Au)$ , or likewise  $uA = Au$  for all  $A \in \mathbb{O}$ . Therefore  $u$  is a scalar multiple of  $1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , i.e.  $u = \mu \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  for some  $\mu \in F$ . Since the linear maps  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are invertible,  $\mu$  is non-zero, and we get  $AB = (Bu^{-1})(Au) = (\mu^{-1}\mu \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}})BA = BA$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ , which is definitely not true as  $\mathbb{O}$  is not commutative.  $\square$

Second, we show that if two invertible linear maps commute with the octonion product, then these are mutually inverse scalar multiplication maps.

**Lemma 1.8.2.** *Suppose  $\phi, \psi : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  are two invertible  $F$ -linear maps such that  $AB = (A\phi)(B\psi)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . Then  $\psi : x \mapsto \mu x$  for some non-zero  $\mu \in F$  and  $\phi = \psi^{-1}$ , i.e.  $\phi : x \mapsto \mu^{-1}x$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\phi, \psi : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  are  $F$ -linear maps such that  $AB = (A\phi)(B\psi)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . When  $A = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  we get  $B\psi = uB$  for all  $B \in \mathbb{O}$  where  $u = (1_{\mathbb{O}}\phi)^{-1}$ , so the map  $\psi$  is left multiplication by  $u$ . Substituting  $B = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  on the other hand gives us  $A = (A\phi)(1_{\mathbb{O}}\psi)$  for all  $A$  and so  $A\phi = Av$  where  $v = (1_{\mathbb{O}}\psi)^{-1}$ , so  $\phi$  is the right multiplication by  $v$ . Therefore the condition in this case becomes  $AB = (Av)(uB)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . Substituting  $B = u^{-1}$ , we get  $Au^{-1} = Av$  for all  $A \in \mathbb{O}$ , and therefore  $v = u^{-1}$ , and our identity turns out to be  $AB = (Au^{-1})(uB)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . Now since  $u$  is invertible, we can write  $u^{-1} = N(u)^{-1}\bar{u}$ . Finally, by Corollary 1.7.4,  $u$  must be a scalar multiple of  $1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , i.e.  $u = \mu \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ .  $\square$

The statements in Lemmas 1.8.1 and 1.8.2 are true even when  $\mathbb{O}$  is not split.

## Chapter 2

### Groups of type $E_6$

In this chapter we derive a complete self-contained construction of the group  $E_6(F)$  acting on its 27-dimensional module. As already mentioned in the Introduction, we do not make any assumptions on whether the underlying field  $F$  is finite or infinite. The approach presented in this chapter is also characteristic-free.

Of great interest to us is the action of  $E_6(F)$  on a certain set of elements in the 27-dimensional module. It turns out, that careful and detailed study of this action reveals many hidden wonders of the group structure.

#### 2.1 Albert vectors

##### 2.1.1 Albert space $\mathbb{J}$

For the further discussion we consider  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$  to be an arbitrary octonion algebra over the field  $F$ . In the results which require  $\mathbb{O}$  to be split, we specify this explicitly.

Define the *Albert space*  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_F$  to be the 27-dimensional vector space spanned by the elements of the form

$$(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) = \begin{bmatrix} a & C & \bar{B} \\ \bar{C} & b & A \\ B & \bar{A} & c \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.1)$$

where  $a, b, c, A, B, C \in \mathbb{O}$  and furthermore  $a, b, c \in \langle 1_{\mathbb{O}} \rangle$ . Now, an *Albert vector* is

an element of  $\mathbb{J}$ . To denote certain subspaces of  $\mathbb{J}$  we use the following intuitive notation. The 10-dimensional subspace spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  is denoted  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{a b C}$ , while the 8-dimensional subspace spanned by the vectors  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, 0, 0)$  is denoted  $\mathbb{J}_8^A$  and so on. That is, the subscript determines the dimension and the superscript shows which of the six ‘coördinates’ we use to span the corresponding subspace. Of course, this notation is by no means complete as it does not allow us to denote any possible subspace of  $\mathbb{J}$ . If this is the case, we specify the spanning vectors and denote the corresponding space in some other manner.

Suppose  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \in \mathbb{J}$  is an arbitrary Albert vector. We define a quadratic form  $Q$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  via

$$Q(X) = A\bar{A} + B\bar{B} + C\bar{C} - ab - ac - bc. \quad (2.2)$$

As usual, this can be polarised to obtain the inner product

$$\begin{aligned} B(X, Y) = T(A_1\bar{A}_2 + B_1\bar{B}_2 + C_1\bar{C}_2) \\ - (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1) - (a_1c_2 + a_2c_1) - (b_1c_2 + b_2c_1), \end{aligned} \quad (2.3)$$

where  $X = (a_1, b_1, c_1 \mid A_1, B_1, C_1)$  and  $Y = (a_2, b_2, c_2 \mid A_2, B_2, C_2)$ .

### 2.1.2 Dickson–Freudenthal determinant and $SE_6(F)$

Lacking the associativity in  $\mathbb{O}$  we also need to be slightly careful when we calculate the determinant of  $X \in \mathbb{J}$ . For these purposes we define the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant (see, for example, Section 3 in [Wil13]) as

$$\Delta(X) = abc \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}} - aA\bar{A} - bB\bar{B} - cC\bar{C} + T(ABC) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}. \quad (2.4)$$

This is a cubic form on  $\mathbb{J}$  and it can be shown that it is equivalent to the original Dickson’s cubic form [Dic01] used to construct the group of type  $E_6$ .

We define the group  $SE_6(F)$ , or  $SE_6(F, \mathbb{O})$  if we want to specify the octonion algebra, to be the group of all  $F$ -linear maps on  $\mathbb{J}$  preserving the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant. If  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ , then we denote this by  $SE_6(q)$ . The group  $E_6(F)$  is defined as the quotient of  $SE_6(F)$  by its centre. Suppose  $M$  is a  $3 \times 3$  matrix written over  $\mathbb{O}$ . If

$M$  is written over any sociable subalgebra of  $\mathbb{O}$ , then for an element  $X \in \mathbb{J}$  the mapping  $X \mapsto \overline{M}^\top XM$  makes sense. Indeed, every entry in the matrix  $\overline{M}^\top XM$  is a sum of the terms of the form  $m_1 x m_2$ , where  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  belong to the same sociable subalgebra, and so  $(m_1 x) m_2 = m_1 (x m_2)$ . Furthermore, the map  $X \mapsto \overline{M}^\top XM$  is obviously  $F$ -linear:

$$\overline{M}^\top (\lambda X + \mu Y) M = \lambda (\overline{M}^\top XM) + \mu (\overline{M}^\top YM). \quad (2.5)$$

## 2.2 Some elements of $\text{SE}_6(F)$

Throughtout this section, let  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  be an arbitrary element of  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_F$ . We encode some of the elements of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  by the  $3 \times 3$  matrices written over sociable subalgebras of  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$ . As we mentioned before, if such a matrix  $M$  is written over any sociable subalgebra of  $\mathbb{O}$ , then the expression  $\overline{M}^\top XM$  makes sense. If two matrices  $M$  and  $N$  are written over the same sociable subalgebra, then we have enough associativity to see that the action by the product  $MN$  is the same as the product of the actions, that is

$$(\overline{NM})^\top X(MN) = \overline{N}^\top (\overline{M}^\top XM) N. \quad (2.6)$$

In general, the action by the product of two matrices is not defined whereas the product of the actions still is. Note that also  $-I_3$  acts trivially on  $\mathbb{J}$ .

We first notice that the elements

$$\delta = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \tau = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.7)$$

preserve the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant. Their actions on Albert vectors can be defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \delta : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (b, a, c \mid \overline{B}, \overline{A}, \overline{C}), \\ \tau : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (c, a, b \mid C, A, B). \end{aligned} \quad (2.8)$$

We call  $\tau$  the *triality* element. Now let  $x$  be any octonion and consider the matrices

$$M_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad M'_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & x \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad M''_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ x & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.9)$$

Note that the elements  $M'_x, M''_x$  can be obtained from  $M_x$  by conjugating by the triality element  $\tau$ , so to show that all three families described above preserve the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant, we only need to consider one of them.

**Lemma 2.2.1.** *The elements  $M_x$ , where  $x \in \mathbb{O}$  is any octonion, preserve the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant, and hence they encode elements of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ .*

*Proof.* The action of  $M_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  is given by

$$M_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (a, b + aN(x) + T(\bar{x}C), c \mid A + \bar{x}B, B, C + ax).$$

The individual terms in the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant are being mapped in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} abc &\mapsto abc + a^2cN(x) + acT(\bar{x}C), \\ -aA\bar{A} &\mapsto -aA\bar{A} - aT(ABx) - aN(x)N(B), \\ -bB\bar{B} &\mapsto -bB\bar{B} - aN(x)N(B) - T(\bar{x}C)B\bar{B}, \\ -cC\bar{C} &\mapsto -cC\bar{C} - acT(\bar{x}C) - a^2cN(x), \\ T(ABC) &\mapsto T(ABC) + B\bar{B}T(\bar{x}C) + 2aN(x)N(B) + aT(ABx). \end{aligned}$$

It is visibly obvious now that all the necessary terms on the right-hand side cancel out, so the result follows.  $\square$

It is obvious enough that we can also consider the transposes

$$L_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ x & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad L'_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & x & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad L''_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & x \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.10)$$

for an arbitrary  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ . Notice that  $L_x = \delta \cdot M_x \cdot \delta$ ,  $L'_x = \delta \cdot M'_x \cdot \delta$ , and  $L''_x = \delta \cdot M''_x \cdot \delta$ , so these are also the elements of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ . Further in this thesis we will be able to show

that the actions of the elements  $M_x, M'_x, M''_x, L_x, L'_x$  and  $L''_x$  generate the whole group  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ .

Finally, we consider the elements of the form

$$P_u = \begin{bmatrix} u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & u^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad P'_u = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & u & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & u^{-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad P''_u = \begin{bmatrix} u^{-1} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & u \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.11)$$

where  $u$  is an octonion of norm one. Note that in this case  $u^{-1} = \bar{u}$ . The action of the element  $P_u$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  is given by

$$P_u : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (a, b, c \mid uA, Bu, \bar{u}C\bar{u}). \quad (2.12)$$

It is a matter of straightforward computation to show that the elements  $P_u$  preserve the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant. Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned} abc &\mapsto abc, \\ aA\bar{A} &\mapsto a(uA)(\bar{A}\bar{u}) = aN(uA) = aN(A).N(u) = aA\bar{A}, \\ bB\bar{B} &\mapsto b(Bu)(\bar{u}\bar{B}) = bN(Bu) = bB\bar{B}, \\ cC\bar{C} &\mapsto c(\bar{u}C\bar{u})(u\bar{C}u) = cN(\bar{u}C\bar{u}) = cN(C).N(u)^2 = cC\bar{C}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.13)$$

and for the last term we get

$$\begin{aligned} T((uA)(Bu)(\bar{u}C\bar{u})) &= T((\bar{u}C\bar{u})(uA)(Bu)) = T((\bar{u}(C(\bar{u}(uA))))(Bu)) \\ &= T((\bar{u}(CA))(Bu)) = T((Bu)(\bar{u}(CA))) = T(B(u(\bar{u}(CA)))) = T(B(CA)) \\ &= T((BC)A) = T(ABC). \end{aligned} \quad (2.14)$$

On the other hand, it is not difficult to see that  $P_u = M_{u^{-1}} \cdot L_1 \cdot M_{u^{-1}-1} \cdot L_{-u}$ , so the fact that the matrices  $P_u$  preserve the determinant follows from the calculations already done for the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$ . We also notice that the elements  $P_u$  preserve the quadratic form  $Q_8^C$  defined on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$  via

$$Q_8^C((0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)) = C\bar{C}. \quad (2.15)$$

We finish this section by showing that the action of the elements  $P_u$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , as  $u$  ranges through all the octonions of norm one, is that of  $\Omega_8(F, Q_8^C)$  when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split.

**Lemma 2.2.2.** *If  $\mathbb{O}$  is split, the actions of the elements  $P_u$  on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$ , as  $u$  ranges through all the octonions of norm one, generate a group of type  $\Omega_8^+(F)$ . The action on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is also that of  $\Omega_8^+(F)$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the action on the last octonionic ‘coördinate’, i.e.  $C \mapsto \bar{u}C\bar{u}$ . We will show now that this map can be represented as a product of two reflexions. To avoid any predicaments in characteristic 2, we notice that since  $\langle x, y \rangle = T(x\bar{y})$ , we get

$$\frac{2\langle x, y \rangle}{\langle y, y \rangle} = \frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{N(y)}. \quad (2.16)$$

Now, the reflexion in the hyperplane orthogonal to an arbitrary element  $u \in \mathbb{O}$  is the map

$$r_u : x \mapsto x - \frac{T(x\bar{u})}{N(u)} \cdot u = x - \frac{x\bar{u} + u\bar{x}}{N(u)} \cdot u = x - \frac{(x\bar{u})u - u\bar{x}u}{N(u)} = -\frac{u\bar{x}u}{N(u)}. \quad (2.17)$$

Note that if  $N(u) = 1$ , then  $r_u : x \mapsto -u\bar{x}u$  and  $r_1 : -u\bar{x}u \mapsto \bar{u}x\bar{u}$ , so the given action of  $P_u$  on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$  is the composition  $r_u \circ r_1$ .

As  $u$  ranges through all octonions of norm one, we get the action of  $\Omega_8(F, Q_8^C)$  on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$ . Since we assume that  $\mathbb{O}$  is split, the form  $Q_8$  is of plus type, so we may denote this group as  $\Omega_8^+(F)$ . When acting on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , the form  $ab - C\bar{C}$  is preserved, so we again get the action of  $\Omega_8^+(F)$ .  $\square$



## 2.3 The white points

### 2.3.1 The mixed form and the white vectors

Suppose  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  and  $Y = (d, e, f \mid D, E, F)$  are arbitrary Albert vectors of  $\mathbb{J}$ . Define the mixed form  $M(Y, X)$  as

$$\begin{aligned} M(Y, X) = & bcd + ace + abf - dA\bar{A} - eB\bar{B} - fC\bar{C} \\ & - a(D\bar{A} + A\bar{D}) - b(E\bar{B} + B\bar{E}) - c(F\bar{C} + C\bar{F}) \\ & + T(DBC + ECA + FAB). \end{aligned} \quad (2.18)$$

Note that if  $F \neq \mathbb{F}_2$ , then  $M(X, Y)$  can be obtained from the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant, for we have

$$\begin{aligned} M(X, Y) = & \frac{1}{\alpha(\alpha - 1)} \Delta(X + \alpha Y) \\ & - \frac{1}{\alpha - 1} \Delta(X + Y) + \frac{1}{\alpha} \Delta(X) - (\alpha + 1) \Delta(Y), \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

for any  $\alpha \notin \{0, 1\}$ .

We colour the non-zero Albert vectors in  $\mathbb{J}$  according to the following rules.

**Definition 2.3.1.** A non-zero Albert vector  $X \in \mathbb{J}$  is called

- (i) *white* if  $M(Y, X) = 0$  for all  $Y \in \mathbb{J}$ ;
- (ii) *grey* if  $\Delta(X) = 0$  and there exists  $Y \in \mathbb{J}$  such that  $M(Y, X) \neq 0$ ;
- (iii) *black* if  $\Delta(X) \neq 0$  and  $X$  is not white.

A white/grey/black point is a 1-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{J}$  spanned by a white/grey/black vector.

For example, the vector  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  is white, because if  $Y$  is an arbitrary Albert vector, then  $M(Y, X) = 0$ . Similarly,  $(\lambda, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , where  $\lambda \neq 0$ , is black, since in this case  $\Delta(X) = \lambda \neq 0$ , and it is certainly not white as there exists  $Y = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  such that  $M(Y, X) \neq 0$ :

$$M(Y, X) = \lambda(bc - A\bar{A}) + (ac - B\bar{B}) + (ab - C\bar{C}). \quad (2.20)$$

Taking, for instance,  $Y = (0, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , we get  $M(Y, X) = \lambda \neq 0$ . Finally, the vector  $(0, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  is grey as  $\Delta(X) = 0$  and for  $Y = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  the value of  $M$  is given by

$$M(Y, X) = (ac - B\bar{B}) + (ab - C\bar{C}), \quad (2.21)$$

so we may take  $Y = (1, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  to get  $M(Y, X) = 1 \neq 0$ . The terms white, grey and black were introduced by Cohen and Cooperstein [CC88]. In the paper by Aschbacher [Asc87] they are called ‘singular’, ‘brilliant non-singular’ and ‘dark’ respectively. Jacobson [Jac60] uses the terms ‘rank 1’, ‘rank 2’ and ‘rank 3’. We also note that  $\Delta(X) = 0$  for any white vector  $X$ .

It is clear that the action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  preserves the colour, except possibly in case  $F = \mathbb{F}_2$ , when white and grey vectors may be intermixed. Later we shall see that  $\text{SE}_6(\mathbb{F}_2)$  is also colour-preserving.

Let  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  be an arbitrary white vector. A white vector  $W$  determines the quadratic form  $\Delta(X + W) - \Delta(X) = M(W, X)$  on  $\mathbb{J}$ . Its radical is 17-dimensional and for any non-zero  $\lambda \in F$  we have  $\Delta(X + \lambda W) - \Delta(X) = \lambda(\Delta(X + W) - \Delta(X))$ , so the form determined by  $\lambda W$  has the same radical. Thus, the 17-dimensional space is determined by the white point  $\langle W \rangle$ .

For example, for the white vector  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  the value of the quadratic form on  $\mathbb{J}$  is  $ab - C\bar{C}$ , whose radical is  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . For the vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, D)$  with  $D \neq 0 = D\bar{D}$  the form is  $\hat{Q}(X) = T(D(AB - c\bar{C}))$  with  $\hat{B}(X, Y) = T(D(AB' + A'B - c\bar{C}' - c'\bar{C}))$  being its polar form, where  $Y = (a', b', c' \mid A', B', C')$ . Now  $X$  is in the radical of  $\hat{Q}$  if and only if  $\hat{Q}(X) = 0$  and  $\hat{B}(X, Y) = 0$  for all  $Y$ . Taking  $Y = (a', b', 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  gives us  $T(D\bar{C}) = 0$  and taking  $Y = (a', b', 0 \mid 0, B', 0)$  gives us  $T(DAB') = T((DA)B') = 0$  for all  $B'$ , so  $DA = 0$ . If  $Y = (a', b', 0 \mid A', 0, 0)$  then  $T(D(A'B)) = T((BD)A') = 0$  for all  $A'$ , so we get  $BD = 0$ . Finally, setting  $Y = (a', b', 0 \mid 0, 0, C')$  gives us  $T(cD\bar{C}') = 0$  for all  $\bar{C}'$ , so  $cD = 0$ , and thus  $c = 0$ . Therefore the radical is

$$\{(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C) \mid DA = BD = T(D\bar{C}) = 0\}. \quad (2.22)$$

To obtain 17-spaces determined by other “coördinate” white vectors we apply a suitable power of  $\tau$  to these two.

Next, we derive a system of conditions for an arbitrary vector  $X \in \mathbb{J}$  to be white.

**Lemma 2.3.2.** *An Albert vector  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  is white if and only if the following conditions hold:*

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A\bar{A} &= bc, \\ B\bar{B} &= ca, \\ C\bar{C} &= ab, \\ AB &= c\bar{C}, \\ BC &= a\bar{A}, \\ CA &= b\bar{B}. \end{aligned} \right\}. \quad (2.23)$$

If  $X$  is white, then  $\Delta(X) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Let  $Y = (d, e, f \mid D, E, F)$ . We rewrite  $M(Y, X)$  in the form

$$\begin{aligned} M(Y, X) &= (bc - A\bar{A})d + (ac - B\bar{B})e + (ab - C\bar{C})f \\ &\quad + T(D(BC - a\bar{A}) + E(CA - b\bar{B}) + F(AB - c\bar{C})). \end{aligned}$$

It is visibly clear now that if all the conditions in the statement are satisfied, then  $M(Y, X) = 0$ . Now, taking  $Y = (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  forces  $bc - A\bar{A} = 0$ . Similarly, we may take  $Y = (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  to get  $ac - B\bar{B} = 0$  and, say,  $Y = (0, 0, 0 \mid D, 0, 0)$  to obtain  $T(D(BC - a\bar{A})) = 0$  which forces  $BC - a\bar{A} = 0$  as  $D \in \mathbb{O}$  can be arbitrary. The other conditions are proved similarly.

Finally, if  $X$  is white, then we get  $T(ABC) = T(aA\bar{A}) = T(abc) = 2abc$ . Also  $bB\bar{B} = bca$ , and so on. Overall we get

$$\Delta(X) = abc - abc - bca - cab + 2abc = 0$$

as required. This completes the proof.  $\square$

### 2.3.2 Action of $\text{SE}_6(F)$ on white points

In this thesis we will be mostly interested in the action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  on the white points.

Consider the white vectors  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  and  $Y = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . We find  $\Delta(X + Y) - \Delta(X) = ab - C\bar{C}$ , which is a quadratic form with 17-dimensional radical in  $\mathbb{J}$ . In the case when  $Y = (0, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  we get  $\Delta(X + Y) - \Delta(X) = a + ab + ac -$

$B\bar{B}-C\bar{C}$ . If  $F = \mathbb{F}_2$ , we have  $a^2 = a$ , so the latter form is quadratic with 9-dimensional radical. This shows that  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  and  $(0, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  are in different orbits of the isometry group for any field.

Finally, we investigate the orbits of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  on Albert vectors. One of our main goals is to show that  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  acts transitively on white points.

**Lemma 2.3.3.** *Suppose  $X$  is an arbitrary Albert vector. Then  $X$  can be mapped under the action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  to a vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$  with  $(a, b, c) \neq (0, 0, 0)$ . In the case when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split,  $X$  can be mapped to precisely one of the following:*

- (i)  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , a white vector;
- (ii)  $(0, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , a grey vector; or
- (iii)  $(\lambda, 1, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  where  $\lambda \neq 0$ , a black vector.

In the last case there is one orbit for each non-zero value of  $\lambda$ .

*Proof.* It is clear that black vectors are not in the same orbit as white and grey, since they have different values of  $\Delta$ . We have already shown that these particular white and grey vectors are in different orbits in case of any field.

First, we show that each orbit of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  contains an Albert vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . Suppose that  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  is non-zero. If  $(a, b, c) = (0, 0, 0)$ , then after applying the triality element  $\tau$  a suitable number of times we may assume  $C \neq 0$ . Consider the action of the element  $L_x$  on the Albert vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, C)$ :

$$L_x : (0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (T(Cx), 0, 0 \mid A, B + \bar{A}x, C),$$

so we may choose orbit representatives with  $(a, b, c) \neq (0, 0, 0)$ .

As before, using a suitable power of  $\tau$ , we may assume  $c \neq 0$ . Now we apply the element  $M_x''$  with  $x = -c^{-1}B$  to  $X$ , to obtain a vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid A, 0, C)$ , where the ‘coördinate’  $c$  stays the same, while  $a, b, A, C$  are possibly different. Next,  $(a, b, c \mid A, 0, C)$  can be mapped to a vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, C)$  under the action of  $L_x$  with  $x = -c^{-1}A$ , where the value of  $c$  stays the same while the values of  $a, b, C$  may be adjusted.

If  $a = b = 0$ ,  $C \neq 0$ , then we apply the element  $L_x$  with  $x$  such that  $T(Cx) \neq 0$  to get a vector of the form  $(T(Cx), 0, c \mid 0, 0, C)$ , i.e. we may assume that  $a \neq 0$ . With

the latter assumption we apply the element  $M_x$  with  $x = -a^{-1}C$  to  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, C)$  to get a vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$  with the value of  $b$  being adjusted.

Finally, we use the elements  $\tau$ ,  $P_u$  and  $P_v''$  to standardise  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$  to one of the forms in the statement.  $\square$

Note that the last part of the proof of this lemma used the fact that the map  $N : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow F$  is onto, which is the case when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split. However, this is not true in all octonion algebras, which possibly leads to a larger number of orbits. A vector of the form  $(a, b, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$  is white if and only if precisely one of the  $a, b, c$  is non-zero, so we get a transitive action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  on white points regardless of the chosen octonion algebra.

Furthermore, we used the fact that  $N$  is a non-singular quadratic form on  $\mathbb{O}$ , i.e. provided  $C \neq 0$ , the map  $x \mapsto T(Cx)$  is surjective. This is true for any octonion algebra.

Later we will use the transitivity on white points to calculate the group order in case  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$  by finding the stabiliser of a white point and calculating the number of white points in case of a finite field.

**Lemma 2.3.4.** *Let  $\mathbb{O}$  be an arbitrary octonion algebra over  $F$ . Let  $X \in \mathbb{J}$  be white and let  $\mathbb{J}_{17}$  be the 17-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{J}$  determined by  $X$ . The stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\langle X \rangle$ , and even of  $X$ , is transitive on the white points spanned by the vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{17} \setminus \langle X \rangle$  (there are no such white points when  $\mathbb{O}$  is non-split). It is also transitive on the white points spanned by the vectors in  $\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}$ .*

*Proof.* Without loss of generality assume  $X = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . As we know, the white point  $\langle X \rangle$  determines the 17-space  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . We also note that  $X$  is stabilised by the actions of the elements  $M_x$ ,  $L_x$ ,  $M'_x$  and  $L''_x$ . Those act on the elements in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} M_x &: (0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, c \mid A + \bar{x}\bar{B}, B, 0), \\ L_x &: (0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, c \mid A, B + \bar{A}x, 0), \\ M'_x &: (0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, c + T(\bar{x}A) \mid A, B, 0), \\ L''_x &: (0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, c + T(Bx) \mid A, B, 0). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that a general white vector  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB} \setminus \langle X \rangle$  can easily be mapped to  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, 0)$  using the action of  $M'_x$  or  $L''_x$  for some suitable  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ . A vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, 0)$  is white if  $(A, B) \neq (0, 0)$  and  $A\bar{A} = B\bar{B} = AB = 0$ . It is obvious enough

that  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB} \setminus \langle X \rangle$  is empty if  $\mathbb{O}$  is not split, so we only need to show transitivity on the corresponding white points in case when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split.

If  $B = 0$  then evidently  $A \neq 0$  and so we can apply the duality element  $\delta$  to obtain a white vector of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, 0)$  with  $B \neq 0$ . If now  $A \neq 0$ , we act by  $M_x$  to obtain  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A + \bar{x}\bar{B}, B, 0)$ . Our aim is to show that there exists such  $x$  in  $\mathbb{O}$  that  $A + \bar{x}\bar{B} = 0$ . Denote  $U = \{y \in \mathbb{O} \mid \bar{y}B = 0\}$ . Since for all  $x \in \mathbb{O}$  we have  $(\bar{x}\bar{B})B = \bar{x}(\bar{B}B) = 0$ , we conclude that  $\mathbb{O}\bar{B} \leq U$ . Furthermore, we know that both subspaces are four-dimensional, so  $\mathbb{O}\bar{B} = U$ . As  $AB = 0$ , we have  $A \in U$ , and therefore there exists  $y = \bar{x}\bar{B} \in U$  such that  $A + y = 0$ .

Now, the elements  $P_u''$  with  $N(u) = 1$  act on the vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, 0)$  as

$$(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, \bar{u}B\bar{u}, 0),$$

and as  $u$  ranges through all the octonions of norm 1 the action generated is that of  $\Omega_8^+(F)$  (Lemma 2.2.2) which in case when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split is transitive on isotropic vectors, i.e. those with  $B\bar{B} = 0$ . It follows that  $SE_6(F)$  is indeed transitive on the white points spanned by the vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB} \setminus \langle X \rangle$ .

To show the transitivity on white points spanned by the vectors in  $\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  we prove that every white point spanned by a white vector  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \in \mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  can be mapped to the white point spanned by  $(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . Note that we require  $(a, b, C) \neq (0, 0, 0)$  as otherwise  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \in \mathbb{J}_{cAB}^{17}$ .

In case  $(a, b) = (0, 0)$  we choose  $x \in \mathbb{O}$  such that  $T(Cx) \neq 0$  and apply the element  $L_x$ , which maps our vector  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, C)$  to  $(T(Cx), 0, c \mid A, B + \bar{A}x, C)$ . If, on the other hand,  $a = 0$  and  $b \neq 0$ , we apply  $\delta$ . Hence, we may assume that we deal with a vector  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  with  $a \neq 0$ . Take  $x = -a^{-1}C$  and act by the element  $M_x$ :

$$M_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (a, b + aa^{-2}C\bar{C} - T(a^{-1}\bar{C}C), c \mid A - a^{-1}\bar{C}\bar{B}, B, 0).$$

The whiteness conditions (Lemma 2.3.2) imply  $C\bar{C} = a\bar{b}$  and  $BC = a\bar{A}$ , and so additionally we have  $b + aa^{-2}C\bar{C} - T(a^{-1}\bar{C}C) = b + b - T(b) = 0$  and  $A - a^{-1}\bar{C}\bar{B} = A - A = 0$ . This means that the given  $M_x$  acts on the elements of  $\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  in the following way:

$$M_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (a, 0, c \mid 0, B, 0),$$

where  $a \neq 0$ . It is still white, so  $B\bar{B} = ca$ . Finally, we act by  $L_y''$  with  $y = -a^{-1}\bar{B}$ :

$$L_y'' : (a, 0, c \mid 0, B, 0) \mapsto (a, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0),$$

where  $a \neq 0$ . In other words, any white point spanned by an element in  $\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  can be mapped by the action of the stabiliser of  $\langle X \rangle$  to the white point spanned by  $(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ .  $\square$

This lemma tells us precisely that the action of the stabiliser of a white point has rank 3 when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split and rank 2 when it is non-split.

**Lemma 2.3.5.** *The action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  on white points is primitive.*

*Proof.* From the previous Lemma it follows that if  $\mathbb{O}$  is non-split, then the action of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  on white points is 2-transitive and hence primitive. It remains to prove the statement in case when  $\mathbb{O}$  is split.

Suppose  $X, Y \in \mathbb{J}$  are white vectors such that  $\langle X \rangle \neq \langle Y \rangle$ . Define  $\sim$  to be an  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ -congruence on white points and let  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle Y \rangle$ . Our aim is to show that this generates the universal congruence. Since for  $\mathbb{O}$  split the action on the white vectors is transitive, we may assume  $X = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . As mentioned in the beginning of this section,  $\langle X \rangle$  determines the 17-dimensional space  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . We now distinguish two cases.

If  $Y \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ , then acting by the stabiliser of  $\langle X \rangle$  we get  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \hat{Y} \rangle$  for all white  $\hat{Y} \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . Take  $\hat{Y} = (0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0) \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  and  $\hat{X} = (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0) \notin \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . As we see from the earlier calculations, both  $X$  and  $\hat{X}$  are in the 17-space determined by  $\langle \hat{Y} \rangle$ . Acting by the stabiliser of  $\langle \hat{Y} \rangle$  we map  $\langle X \rangle$  to  $\langle \hat{X} \rangle$ , and so ensure  $\langle \hat{Y} \rangle \sim \langle \hat{X} \rangle$ , and so we have the chain  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \hat{Y} \rangle \sim \langle \hat{X} \rangle$ . To get  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \hat{X} \rangle$  for all white  $\hat{X}$  outside  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ , we again act by the stabiliser of  $\langle X \rangle$ . It follows that  $\langle X \rangle$  is congruent to any white point generated by a vector in  $\mathbb{J}$ , and so we get the universal congruence in this case.

On the other hand, if  $Y$  lies outside of  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ , then we get  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \hat{Y} \rangle$  for all white  $\hat{Y} \in \mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  since the stabiliser of  $\langle X \rangle$  is transitive on the white points spanned by those. In particular, we may take  $\hat{Y} = (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . Acting by the stabiliser of  $\langle \hat{Y} \rangle$  on both sides in  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \hat{Y} \rangle$ , we map  $\langle X \rangle$  to  $\langle \hat{X} \rangle$  with  $\hat{X} = (0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)$ . Note that both  $X$  and  $\hat{X}$  are not in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{aBC}$  which is the 17-space determined by  $\hat{Y}$ , but  $\hat{X} \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ .

and by transitivity we get  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \widehat{X} \rangle$ . Again, we act by the stabiliser of  $\langle X \rangle$  to ensure  $\langle X \rangle \sim \langle \widehat{X} \rangle$  for all white points  $\langle \widehat{X} \rangle$  spanned by  $\widehat{X} \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ , i.e. our  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ -congruence is trivial in this case as well.  $\square$

Suppose now  $\langle W \rangle$  and  $\langle X \rangle$  are two white points and consider a *line*  $\langle W, X \rangle$  as a 2-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{J}$  spanned by white vectors  $W$  and  $X$ . Given a white point  $\langle W \rangle$ , we are interested in finding all the white points  $\langle X \rangle$  such that  $\langle W, X \rangle$  is totally white.

We may assume that  $W = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  and  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$ , as  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  acts transitively on white points. Consider an element  $\lambda W + X \in \langle W, X \rangle$ . First, we calculate the value of Dickson–Freudenthal determinant:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(\lambda W + X) &= ab(\lambda + c) - aA\bar{A} - bB\bar{B} - (\lambda + c)C\bar{C} + T(ABC) \\ &= \lambda(ab - C\bar{C}) + \Delta(X). \end{aligned} \quad (2.24)$$

As  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  is white, we get  $\Delta(X) = 0$  and  $ab = C\bar{C}$ , so we conclude  $\Delta(\lambda W + X) = 0$ .

**Proposition 2.3.6.** *If  $\langle W \rangle$  and  $\langle X \rangle$  are two white points, then any vector in (or any 1-subspace of)  $\langle W, X \rangle$  is either white or grey.*

The conditions for  $\lambda W + X$  to be white are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A\bar{A} &= b(\lambda + c), \\ B\bar{B} &= (\lambda + c)a, \\ C\bar{C} &= ab, \\ AB &= (\lambda + c)\bar{C}, \\ BC &= a\bar{A}, \\ CA &= b\bar{B}. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.25)$$

Since  $X$  is white by assumption,  $\lambda W + X$  is white if and only if  $\lambda a = \lambda b = \lambda \bar{C} = 0$  for all  $\lambda \in F$ , which is equivalent to  $a = b = C = 0$ , i.e.  $X \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . Therefore, we conclude the following.



**Proposition 2.3.7.** *Given any white point  $\langle W \rangle$ , the line  $\langle W, X \rangle$ , where  $\langle X \rangle$  is another white point, is totally white if and only if  $X$  belongs to the 17-space determined by  $W$ . Otherwise,  $\langle W, X \rangle$  contains only two white points.*

### 2.3.3 The stabiliser of a white point

In this section we assume that  $\mathbb{O}$  is a split octonion algebra. It is our aim now to obtain the stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of a white point. In particular, we prove the following result.

**Theorem 2.3.8.** *If  $\mathbb{O}$  is split, then the stabiliser of a white vector in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  is isomorphic to the group generated by the actions of the elements  $M_x$ ,  $L_x$ ,  $M'_x$  and  $L''_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  as  $x$  ranges over  $\mathbb{O}$  and this is a group of shape*

$$F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F). \quad (2.26)$$

*The stabiliser of a white point is isomorphic to*

$$F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times, \quad (2.27)$$

*where  $F^\times$  is the multiplicative group of the field  $F$ .*

This whole section is devoted to proving this result. Some of this proof is in the running text, and some of it is contained in a series of technical lemmata.

Since it was shown that the group  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  acts transitively on the set of white points, it is sufficient to study the stabiliser of a specific white vector. For instance, it is convenient to take  $v = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . First thing to notice is that  $v$  is invariant under the action of the elements of the form

$$L''_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & x \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad M'_y = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.28)$$

where  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$ .

**Lemma 2.3.9.**

- (a) Let  $Q$  be any of the  $\{L, L', L'', M, M', M''\}$ . Then the actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of the elements  $Q_x$  where  $x$  ranges over  $\mathbb{O}$  generate an elementary abelian group isomorphic to  $F^8$ .
- (b) Let  $(R, S)$  be any pair from the set  $\{(L, M''), (L', M), (L'', M')\}$  or any of the pairs in  $\{(L, M'), (L', M''), (L'', M)\}$ . Then the actions of  $R_x$  and  $S_x$ , as  $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ , generate an elementary abelian group isomorphic to  $F^{16}$ .

*Proof.* To show part (a) for the elements  $L_x, L'_x, L''_x$  it is enough to consider just, say,  $L''_x$  as to obtain the result for the rest of them we can apply the action of the triality element

$$\tau = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Similarly, out of  $M_x, M'_x, M''_x$  we only need to consider, for instance,  $M'_x$ . The actions of  $L''_x$  and  $M'_y$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} L''_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) \mid A + \bar{C}x, B + a\bar{x}, C), \\ M'_y : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (a, b, c + by\bar{y} + T(\bar{y}A) \mid A + by, B + \bar{y}\bar{C}, C). \end{aligned} \quad (2.29)$$

We notice that the action is nontrivial whenever  $x$  and  $y$  are non-zero. The element  $M'_y$  sends  $(a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) \mid A + \bar{C}x, B + a\bar{x}, C)$  to

$$(a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) + by\bar{y} + T(\bar{y}A) \mid A + \bar{C}x + by, B + a\bar{x} + \bar{y}\bar{C}, C),$$

and the element  $L''_x$  sends  $(a, b, c + by\bar{y} + T(\bar{y}A) \mid A + by, B + \bar{y}\bar{C}, C)$  to

$$(a, b, c + by\bar{y} + T(\bar{y}A) + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) \mid A + by + \bar{C}x, B + \bar{y}\bar{C} + a\bar{x}, C).$$

Hence, the actions of these elements commute. Similarly, it is straightforward to verify that the actions of  $L''_x$  and  $L''_y$  commute as well as the actions of  $M'_x$  and  $M'_y$ . Moreover, the element  $L''_y$  sends  $(a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) \mid A + \bar{C}x, B + a\bar{x}, C)$  to

$$(a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) + ay\bar{y} + T(By) + aT(\bar{x}y) \mid A + \bar{C}x + \bar{C}y, B + a\bar{x} + a\bar{y}, C),$$

and  $L''_{x+y}$  sends  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  to

$$(a, b, c + ax\bar{x} + aT(x\bar{y}) + ay\bar{y} + T(B(x+y)) \mid A + \bar{C}(x+y), B + a(\bar{x} + \bar{y}), C),$$

so the action of  $L''_{x+y}$  is the same as the product of the actions of  $L''_x$  and  $L''_y$ . A similar calculation shows that the action of  $M'_{x+y}$  is the same as the product of the actions of  $M'_x$  and  $M'_y$ . It follows that the action of  $L''_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{O}$  generates an abelian group  $(F^8, +)$  as well as the action of the element  $M'_y$ ,  $y \in \mathbb{O}$ . We simply denote the abelian group  $(F^n, +)$  as  $F^n$  in our further discussion.

To prove part (b) we need to verify that the intersection of the corresponding abelian groups, isomorphic to  $F^8$  and generated by the actions of  $L''_x$  and  $M'_x$  is trivial. Suppose that the actions of  $L''_x$  and  $M'_y$  are equal. Then, according to (2.29), in the fourth “coördinate” we have

$$A + \bar{C}x = A + By$$

for arbitrary  $A, B, C \in \mathbb{O}$ . In other words, we get  $\bar{C}x = By$  for arbitrary octonions  $B$  and  $C$ . In particular, if  $B = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  and  $C = 0$ , we get  $y = 0$  and if  $B = 0$  and  $C = 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , we obtain  $x = 0$ . So, the intersection of two copies of  $F^8$  consists of the identity element as needed, and the result follows. Again, to get (b) for the rest of the pairs in the first set we apply the triality element. The calculations for the second set of pairs are essentially of the same nature.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.3.10.** *The actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of the elements  $P_u$ ,  $P'_u$ , and  $P''_u$  with  $u$  being any invertible octonion, normalise the abelian groups, isomorphic to  $F^8$ , generated by  $L_x$  ( $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ ),  $L'_x$ ,  $L''_x$ ,  $M_x$ ,  $M'_x$ ,  $M''_x$  respectively.*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward calculation. Since  $P_u$ ,  $P'_u$ , and  $P''_u$  are all mutual conjugates by a suitable power of the triality element  $\tau$ , it is enough to consider one of

them. We have the following relations:

$$\begin{aligned}
(L_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } L_{u^{-1}x}, \\
(L'_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } L'_{uxu}, \\
(L''_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } L''_{xu^{-1}}, \\
(M_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } M_{xu}, \\
(M'_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } M'_{u^{-1}xu^{-1}}, \\
(M''_x)^{P'_u} &\text{ acts as } M''_{ux}.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.30}$$

□

The next observation is that our white vector  $v$  is also invariant under the action of the elements

$$M_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad L_y = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ y & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{2.31}$$

First, we show that the actions of these on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  generate a group of type  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$ . As we will see further, instead of arbitrary octonions it is enough for  $x$  to range through the scalar multiples of the basis elements  $e_i$ . Define the quadratic form  $Q_{10}$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  via

$$Q_{10}((a, b, c \mid A, B, C)) = ab - C\bar{C}. \tag{2.32}$$

We notice that  $Q_{10}$  is of *plus* type, so for convenience we denote the group  $\Omega_{10}(F, Q_{10})$  as  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$ .

To construct  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  we follow the series of steps. First, we consider the 4-space  $V_4$  spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C_{-1}e_{-1} + C_1e_1)$  with the quadratic form  $Q_4$  obtained as the restriction of  $Q_{10}$  on  $V$ .

**Lemma 2.3.11.** *The actions of the elements  $M_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$  and  $L_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$  on  $V_4$ , where  $\lambda \in F$ , generate a group of type  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the vectors  $v_1, v_2, v_3$  and  $v_4$  defined as

$$\begin{aligned}
v_1 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\
v_2 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_1), \\
v_3 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-1}), \\
v_4 &= (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0).
\end{aligned}$$

It is clear that these span  $V_4$ , so let  $\mathcal{B} = (v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$  be the basis of  $V_4$ . With respect to  $\mathcal{B}$  the actions of  $M_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$  can be written as  $4 \times 4$  matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For convenience, we do the same calculations for  $L_{-\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$ : its actions on the elements of  $\mathcal{B}$  can be written as matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We invoke Lemma B.1 to finish the proof.  $\square$

In our construction we use the results of Appendix A. Consider the 6-space  $V_6$  spanned by the Albert vectors  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$ , where  $C \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle$ . Our copy of  $\Omega_4^+(F)$  preserves two isotropic Albert vectors in  $V_6$ :

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\bar{\omega}} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{\bar{\omega}}), \\ u_{-\bar{\omega}} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\bar{\omega}}). \end{aligned} \tag{2.33}$$

The element  $M_{e_{\bar{\omega}}}$  preserves  $u_{\bar{\omega}}$  but not  $u_{-\bar{\omega}}$ . Therefore, adjoining  $M_{e_{\bar{\omega}}}$  to  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ , we obtain a subgroup of  $V_4 : \Omega_4^+(F)$  (Lemma A.1), and since  $\Omega_4^+(F)$  is maximal in the latter (Theorem A.3), we conclude that the action of  $M_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$ ,  $L_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$  and  $M_{e_{\bar{\omega}}}$  on  $V_6$  is that of  $V_4 : \Omega_4^+(F)$ . That is, we have constructed the group  $V_4 : \Omega_4^+(F)$  as the stabiliser of  $u_{\bar{\omega}}$  in  $\Omega_6^+(F)$ . Now we use the result of Theorem A.4. The element  $M_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}}$  preserves  $V_6$  but it does not preserve  $u_{\bar{\omega}}$ , and as a consequence it does not preserve the 1-space  $\langle u_{\bar{\omega}} \rangle$ . Therefore, if we adjoin  $M_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}}$  to our copy of  $V_4 : \Omega_4^+(F)$ , we get the action of the group  $\Omega_6^+(F)$  on  $V_6$ .

Similarly, we consider the 8-space  $V_8$  spanned by the vectors  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  with

$C \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle$ . Consider two isotropic Albert vectors

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\omega} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{\omega}), \\ u_{-\omega} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\omega}), \end{aligned} \tag{2.34}$$

which are fixed by our copy of  $\Omega_6^+(F)$ . The action of the element  $M_{e_{\omega}}$  on  $V_8$  preserves  $u_{\omega}$  but not  $u_{-\omega}$  and therefore adjoining this element to  $\Omega_6^+(F)$  we get the action of the group  $V_6 : \Omega_6^+(F)$ . Next, the element  $M_{e_{-\omega}}$  does not preserve the 1-space  $\langle u_{\omega} \rangle$ , so appending it to  $V_6 : \Omega_6^+(F)$  we get the action of the group  $\Omega_8^+(F)$  on  $V_8$ .

Finally, we consider the 10-space  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  with two isotropic Albert vectors

$$\begin{aligned} u_0 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0), \\ u_{-0} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-0}). \end{aligned} \tag{2.35}$$

Following the same procedure, we adjoin the element  $M_{e_0}$  which fixes  $u_0$  but not  $u_{-0}$  to get the action of the group of shape  $V_8 : \Omega_8^+(F)$ . Appending the action of  $M_{e_{-0}}$ , which does not preserve  $\langle u_0 \rangle$ , to this yields the action of  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Lemma 2.3.9 allows us to conclude that we have shown the following result.

**Lemma 2.3.12.** *The actions of  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  generate the group  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  as  $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ .*

Now we need to understand the action of the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on the whole 27-space  $\mathbb{J}$ .

**Lemma 2.3.13.** *Suppose an element of the stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  preserves the decomposition of the Albert space into the direct sum  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_1^c \oplus \mathbb{J}_{16}^{AB} \oplus \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ .*

(a) *If the action of this element on the 10-space  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is given by*

$$\begin{aligned} (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0) &\mapsto (\lambda, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0) &\mapsto (0, \lambda^{-1}, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) &\mapsto (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \end{aligned}$$

*then  $\lambda$  is a square in  $F$ .*

(b) On the other hand, an action of the type

$$\begin{aligned}(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0) &\mapsto (0, \lambda, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0) &\mapsto (\lambda^{-1}, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) &\mapsto (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)\end{aligned}$$

is impossible.

(c) Finally, if the action on the 10-space is trivial, then the action on the corresponding 16-space is that of  $\pm I_{16}$  (hence, the action on  $\mathbb{J}$  is that of  $P_{\pm 1}$ ).

*Proof.* We are considering the elements that fix  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$  pointwise and either fix or swap the 1-dimensional spaces  $\mathbb{J}_1^a$  and  $\mathbb{J}_1^b$ . So we may assume that these elements respectively fix or swap the corresponding 17-spaces  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{aBC}$  and  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{bAC}$ . If the action of the stabiliser swaps  $\mathbb{J}_1^a$  and  $\mathbb{J}_1^b$  while leaving the 1-space  $\mathbb{J}_1^c$  in its place, then it also swaps the 8-spaces  $\mathbb{J}_8^A$  and  $\mathbb{J}_8^B$  as these subspaces are the intersections of the 17-space  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  with  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{bAC}$  and  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{aBC}$  respectively.

Suppose now that an element in the stabiliser acts in the following manner:

$$(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (\lambda a, \lambda^{-1} b, c \mid A\phi, B\psi, C),$$

where  $\phi, \psi : \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  are invertible  $F$ -linear maps. As this action is supposed to preserve the determinant, it has to preserve the cubic term  $T(ABC)$  in particular, i.e. we must have  $T(ABC) = T((A\phi)(B\psi)C)$  for all  $A, B, C \in \mathbb{O}$ . This is equivalent to the condition  $AB = (A\phi)(B\psi)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ , since the original identity is equivalent to  $\langle AB, \bar{C} \rangle = \langle (A\phi)(B\psi), \bar{C} \rangle$ . By Lemma 1.8.2 we find that  $A\phi = \mu^{-1}A$  and  $B\psi = \mu B$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$  and some non-zero  $\mu \in F$ . The individual terms in the determinant are being changed in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned}abc &\mapsto abc, \\ aA\bar{A} &\mapsto \lambda\mu^{-2}aA\bar{A}, \\ bB\bar{B} &\mapsto \lambda^{-1}\mu^2bB\bar{B}, \\ cC\bar{C} &\mapsto cC\bar{C}, \\ T(ABC) &\mapsto T(ABC).\end{aligned}$$

It follows that in order to preserve the determinant we must have  $\lambda^{-1}\mu^2 = 1$ , i.e.

$$\lambda = \mu^2.$$

In case when our element acts as

$$(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (\lambda^{-1}b, \lambda a, c \mid B\psi, A\phi, C),$$

we get  $T(ABC) = T((B\psi)(A\phi)C)$  for all  $A, B, C \in \mathbb{O}$ . This holds if and only if  $AB = (B\psi)(A\phi)$  for all  $A, B \in \mathbb{O}$ . Lemma 1.8.1 asserts that there are no such maps  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ , and so this rules out the latter case.

Finally, if we assume the trivial action on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ , then we get  $\lambda = 1$ , i.e.  $\mu^2 = 1$ , so the action on  $\mathbb{J}$  is indeed that of  $P_{\pm 1}$ .  $\square$

Now let  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  and  $Y = (a', b', c' \mid A', B', C')$  be arbitrary Albert vectors. An isometry which maps  $X$  to  $Y$  and  $v$  to  $\lambda v$  also scales the quadratic form. Indeed, it changes  $\Delta(X + v) - \Delta(X) = ab - C\bar{C}$  to  $\Delta(Y + \lambda v) - \Delta(Y) = \lambda(a'b' - C'\bar{C}')$ . The 17-dimensional radical of both of these forms is fixed, and the quadratic form  $ab - C\bar{C}$  is being scaled by a factor of  $\lambda$ . In particular, when  $\lambda = 1$ , the quadratic form is being preserved. So, the action of the vector stabiliser on the 10-dimensional quotient is that of a subgroup of  $\text{GO}_{10}^+(F)$ .

Consider the white vectors of the form  $(a, 0, c \mid A, B, 0)$  and  $(0, b, c \mid A, B, 0)$  with  $a, b \neq 0$ . In the first case the conditions for being white are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A\bar{A} &= 0, \\ B\bar{B} &= ac, \\ a\bar{A} &= 0, \\ AB &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

In other words, we have a white vector of the form  $(a, 0, B\bar{B}/a \mid 0, B, 0)$ . For the second vector we get

$$\left. \begin{aligned} bc &= A\bar{A}, \\ B\bar{B} &= 0, \\ b\bar{B} &= 0, \\ AB &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

so the vector has the form  $(0, b, A\bar{A}/b \mid A, 0, 0)$ . The elements  $M'_x$  and  $L''_x$  transform



these in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned}
M'_x &: (a, 0, B\bar{B}/a \mid 0, B, 0) \mapsto (a, 0, B\bar{B}/a \mid 0, B, 0), \\
M'_x &: (0, b, A\bar{A}/b \mid A, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, b, A\bar{A}/b + bx\bar{x} + T(\bar{x}A) \mid A + bx, 0, 0), \\
L''_x &: (a, 0, B\bar{B}/a \mid 0, B, 0) \mapsto (a, 0, B\bar{B}/a + ax\bar{x} + T(Bx) \mid 0, B + a\bar{x}, 0), \\
L''_x &: (0, b, A\bar{A}/b \mid A, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, b, A\bar{A}/b \mid A, 0, 0).
\end{aligned}$$

Note that we already have an elementary abelian group  $F^{16}$  acting on the 17-space  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . We can now invoke Lemma 2.3.13 to conclude that the action of the stabiliser on the remaining 10-space  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is that of  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  and the kernel of the action on  $\mathbb{J}$  has order no more than two.

**Theorem 2.3.14.** *The actions of the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  where  $x$  ranges through a split octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O}$  generate a group of type  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$  understood as  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  in case  $F$  has characteristic 2.*

With the result of Lemma 2.3.9 we conclude that the stabiliser of a white vector is indeed a group of shape  $F^{16}:\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$  as usual understood as  $F^{16}:\Omega_{10}^+(F)$  in case of characteristic 2.

Now we have enough ingredients to produce the vector stabiliser. As before, we consider the stabiliser of the white vector  $v = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . As we know from Theorem 2.3.14 and Lemma 2.3.13, the actions of the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  generate a group of type  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$ . It is easy to check that this copy of  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$  normalises the elementary abelian group  $F^{16}$  from Lemma 2.3.9. A straightforward computation illustrates the following result:

$$\begin{aligned}
(M'_x)^{L_y} &\text{ acts as } M'_x, \\
(M'_x)^{M_y} &\text{ acts as } L''_{-yx} \cdot M'_x, \\
(L''_x)^{L_y} &\text{ acts as } M'_{-yx} \cdot L''_x, \\
(L''_x)^{M_y} &\text{ acts as } L''_x,
\end{aligned} \tag{2.36}$$

where the products in the right-hand side are understood as the products of the actions rather than as the matrix products. Furthermore, the intersection of the groups  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$  and  $F^{16}$  is trivial: the action of  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  preserves the decomposition  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_1^c \oplus \mathbb{J}_{16}^{AB} \oplus \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , while any non-trivial action of the elementary abelian group  $F^{16}$

fails to do so. Indeed, a general element in  $F^{16}$  has the form  $M'_x \cdot L''_y$  for some  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$  and it sends an Albert vector  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  to

$$(a, b, c + aN(y) + bN(x) + T(By) + T(\bar{x}A) + T(\bar{x}\bar{C}y) \mid A + \bar{C}y + bx, B + a\bar{y} + \bar{x}\bar{C}, C).$$

So, we have shown that the actions of the elements  $M'_x, L''_x, M_x, L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  generate a group of shape  $F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$ , as  $x$  ranges through a split algebra  $\mathbb{O}$ .

Next, we consider the white point  $\langle v \rangle$  spanned by our white vector. The stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\langle v \rangle$ , where  $v = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , maps  $v$  to  $\lambda v$  for some non-zero  $\lambda \in F$ . For instance, this can be achieved by the elements

$$P'_{u^{-1}} = \text{diag}(1_{\mathbb{O}}, u^{-1}, u) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & u^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & u \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.37)$$

with  $u$  being an invertible octonion of arbitrary norm. Indeed, any such element  $P'_{u^{-1}}$  sends  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  to  $(0, 0, N(u) \mid 0, 0, 0)$  and since  $N(u)$  can be any non-zero field element, we get an abelian group  $F^\times$  on top of the vector stabiliser. This finishes the proof of the main theorem in this section.

Now, since the vector stabiliser is generated by the actions of  $M_x, L_x, M'_x, L''_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$ , and the subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  generated by  $M_x, M'_x, M''_x, L_x, L'_x, L''_x$  acts transitively on the white points, we make the following conclusion.

**Theorem 2.3.15.** *The group  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  is generated by the actions of  $M_x, M'_x, M''_x$  and  $L_x, L'_x, L''_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  as  $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ .*

## 2.4 Some related geometry

In this section we are interested in some of the underlying incidence geometry related to white points. Consider first a 10-dimensional space  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  and note that it contains only white and grey vectors. In this section we are interested in finding the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ , discovering some of its properties, and also finding the joint stabiliser of such a 10-space and a white point. Note that throughout the whole section  $\mathbb{O}$  is a split octonion algebra.

### 2.4.1 The stabiliser in $\text{SE}_6(F)$ of $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$

The following lemma helps to get an idea what the stabiliser we are looking for can be.

**Lemma 2.4.1.** *The stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  contains a subgroup of shape*

$$F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times. \quad (2.38)$$

*Proof.* We take an arbitrary vector  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  and look how the elements  $M_x, M'_x, M''_x, L_x, L'_x$ , and  $L''_x$  act on it:

$$\begin{aligned} M_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b + aN(x) + T(\bar{x}C), 0 \mid 0, 0, C + ax), \\ M'_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b, aN(x) \mid bx, \bar{x}\bar{C}, C), \\ M''_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \\ L_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a + bN(x) + T(Cx), b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C + b\bar{x}), \\ L'_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \\ L''_x &: (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b, aN(x) \mid \bar{C}x, a\bar{x}, C). \end{aligned}$$

It is visibly clear now that the elements  $M_x, L_x, M''_x, L'_x$  preserve  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . We have been in a similar situation before (Theorem 2.3.8), so we just note here that the abelian group  $F^{16}$  generated by the actions of  $M''_x$  and  $L'_x$  is different from the one generated by  $M'_x$  and  $L''_x$  in the theorem we refer to. Thus, the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is at least a group of shape  $F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$ .

Finally, we notice that each of the elements  $P_u, P'_u, P''_u$  preserve  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . It is straightforward to see that for any invertible octonion  $u$ ,  $P_u \cdot P'_u \cdot P''_u$  acts on  $\mathbb{J}$  as the identity matrix. Therefore we only consider the action on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  of two of them, say  $P_u$  and  $P'_u$ , and since  $P_u$  acts on  $\mathbb{J}$  as  $M_{u-1} \cdot L_1 \cdot M_{u-1-1} \cdot L_{-u}$ , we conclude that they represent elements of  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F)$ , which we already have as a part of the stabiliser, so it is enough to consider the elements  $P'_u$ .

Note that the elements  $P'_u$ , where  $u$  is an arbitrary invertible octonion, preserve  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ :

$$P'_u : (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, bN(u), 0 \mid 0, 0, Cu),$$

so we get  $F^\times$  on top of the stabiliser, and the result follows.  $\square$

The following theorem strengthens this result: we prove that the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is precisely a group of shape  $F^{16}:\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$ .

**Theorem 2.4.2.** *The stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$F^{16}:\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times, \quad (2.39)$$

generated by the actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of the elements  $M_x, M_x'', L_x, L_x'$  as  $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ , and  $P'_u$  as  $u$  ranges through invertible octonions in  $\mathbb{O}$ .

*Proof.* Consider the white point  $W$  spanned by  $(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . We are interested in the joint stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  and  $W$ . Theorem 2.3.8 tells us that the stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $W$  has the shape  $G_W = F^{16}:\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$ , and  $H \cong \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$ , generated by the actions of  $M_x, L_x, P'_u$ , stabilises  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Note that the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  acts as  $\Omega_{10}^+(F).F^\times$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  since the normal subgroup  $F^{16}$  and the central involution (if any) of the standard complement  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$ , generated by  $L_x, M_x$ , and  $P'_u$ , act trivially thereon.

The normal subgroup  $T_1 \cong F^{16}$  of  $G_W$  is a left (or right) transversal of  $H$  in  $G_W$ . It is easy to see that no non-trivial element of  $T_1$  stabilises  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Indeed, a general element in  $T_1$  has the form  $M'_x \cdot L''_y$  for some  $x, y \in \mathbb{O}$  and it sends  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \in \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  to

$$(a, b, aN(y) + bN(x) + T(\bar{x}\bar{C}y) \mid \bar{C}y + bx, a\bar{y} + \bar{x}\bar{C}, C).$$

Therefore, such an element preserves  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  if and only if the following conditions hold for arbitrary  $a, b$ , and  $C$ :

$$\left. \begin{aligned} aN(y) + bN(x) + T(\bar{x}\bar{C}y) &= 0, \\ \bar{C}y + bx &= 0, \\ a\bar{y} + \bar{x}\bar{C} &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

In particular, if we take  $C = 0, b = 1$  then we obtain  $x = 0$ , and when  $C = 0, a = 1$ , we get  $y = 0$ .

Let  $T_2$  be the subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  generated by the actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of  $M''_x$  and  $L'_y$  as  $x, y$  range through  $\mathbb{O}$ . It can be shown that  $T_2$  is isomorphic to  $F^{16}$ ; this proof is rather similar to the proof  $T_1 \cong F^{16}$ . Consider the 26-dimensional space  $\mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC}$  spanned by

the 17-spaces corresponding to the white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Let  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  be a white vector outside  $\mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC}$ , that is, with  $c \neq 0$ . The whiteness conditions imply that such a vector has the form  $(B\bar{B}/c, A\bar{A}/c, c \mid A, B, \bar{B}\bar{A}/c)$ .  $T_2$  acts sharply transitively on white points spanned by these vectors. Therefore, the full stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is indeed  $F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$ .  $\square$

Next, we investigate the orbits of the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  on white vectors and white points. First, we consider white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . An arbitrary non-zero Albert vector  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  is white if and only if  $ab - C\bar{C} = 0$ . Note that the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  acts on the [quotient] 10-space as  $\Omega_{10}^+(F)$ , and is transitive on such vectors. Therefore, the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is transitive on white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , and on the white points spanned by them.

Suppose now that  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  is a white vector such that  $(c, A, B) \neq (0, 0, 0)$ . We consider two cases. First, assume  $c \neq 0$ . The element  $M''_{-c^{-1}B}$  maps our vector to  $(a - c^{-1}N(B), b, c \mid A, 0, C - c^{-1}\bar{B}\bar{A})$ , and since the latter is white, we have  $a - c^{-1}N(B) = 0 = C - c^{-1}\bar{B}\bar{A}$ , so our new vector is of the form  $(0, b, c \mid A, 0, 0)$ . Similarly, we act on it by  $L_{-c^{-1}\bar{A}}$  to obtain  $(0, b - c^{-1}N(A), c \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , and since this vector is also white, we have  $b - c^{-1}N(A) = 0$ , so the resulting vector is of the form  $(0, 0, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$ ,  $c \neq 0$ .

Second, we consider the case  $c = 0$ , so we start with  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  where  $(A, B) \neq (0, 0)$ . The whiteness conditions are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A\bar{A} &= 0, \\ B\bar{B} &= 0, \\ C\bar{C} &= ab, \\ AB &= 0, \\ BC &= a\bar{A}, \\ CA &= b\bar{B}. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.40)$$

If  $(a, b) = (0, 0)$ , then we choose a suitable  $M_x$ ,  $M''_x$ ,  $L_x$ , or  $L'_x$  to map our vector to a vector of the form  $(a', b', 0 \mid A', B', C')$  with  $(a', b') \neq (0, 0)$ . Thus, we may assume  $(a, b) \neq (0, 0)$ .

We again distinguish two cases. If  $a \neq 0$ , then we act on  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  by  $M_{-a^{-1}C}$  to get  $(a, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, 0)$ . Next, we act by  $M''_y$  to get  $(a + T(\bar{y}B), 0, 0 \mid 0, B, 0)$ ,

and choosing a suitable  $y$  we obtain  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, 0)$ .

If  $b \neq 0$ , the action by  $L_{-b^{-1}\bar{C}}$  maps  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  to  $(0, b, 0 \mid A, 0, 0)$  and similarly acting by a suitable  $L'_y$ , we obtain  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, 0, 0)$ . Recall that the duality element  $\delta$  preserves  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , so it is enough to consider vectors  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, 0, 0)$  with  $A \in \mathbb{O}$ . By choosing a copy of  $\Omega_8^+(F)$  generated by the elements  $P'_u$  with  $u$  being an octonion of norm one, we can map  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, 0, 0)$  to  $(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)$ .

Finally, it is impossible to map  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  with  $c \neq 0$  to  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  using any of the elements  $M_x$ ,  $M''_x$ ,  $L_x$ , and  $L'_x$ , so these two belong to different orbits. In other words, we have shown the following result.

**Theorem 2.4.3.** *The stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  has three orbits on white points:*

- (i) *images of  $\langle(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)\rangle$  under the action of the stabiliser,*
- (ii) *images of  $\langle(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)\rangle$  under the action of the stabiliser,*
- (iii) *images of  $\langle(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)\rangle$  under the action of the stabiliser.*

## 2.4.2 Joint stabilisers of $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ and a white point

Now that we know the structure of the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$ , and moreover, we know the orbits of its action on white points, it is possible to figure out the joint stabilisers. The results are presented in a series of lemmas.

**Lemma 2.4.4.** *The joint stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  and  $\langle(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)\rangle$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$F^{16} : F^8 : \text{Spin}_8^+(F).F^\times.F^\times. \quad (2.41)$$

*Proof.* The orbit of  $\langle(1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0)\rangle$  under the action of the stabiliser of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is the set of all white points spanned by the vectors in this 10-space. Any white point  $\langle(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)\rangle$  in this 10-space satisfies  $ab - C\bar{C} = 0$ . The normal subgroup  $F^{16} \trianglelefteq F^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$  acts trivially on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Preserving a white point is equivalent to preserving an isotropic point in  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times$  and thus we obtain the action of a group of shape  $F^{16} : F^8 : \text{Spin}_8^+(F).F^\times.F^\times$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 2.4.5.** *The joint stabiliser in  $\text{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  and  $\langle(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)\rangle$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$F^{11} : F^{10} : \text{SL}_5(F) \cdot F^\times \cdot F^\times. \quad (2.42)$$

*Proof.* The 17-space  $U$  of  $\langle(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)\rangle$  consists of the vectors  $(0, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  where  $b, c \in F \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

The joint stabiliser preserves this space and hence also its intersection with  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ , which is the 5-dimensional space  $\langle(0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)\rangle$  where  $C \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$ . Consider the actions of  $M_x$ ,  $L_x$ ,  $M''_x$ , and  $L'_x$  on this intersection:

$$\begin{aligned} M_x &: (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (0, b + T(\bar{x}C), 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \\ L_x &: (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (bN(x) + T(Cx), b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \\ M''_x &: (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C), \\ L'_x &: (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $M_x$  preserves the 5-space for any  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ , and  $L_x$  does so if and only if  $bN(x) + T(Cx) = 0$ , from which we find  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$ . Finally,  $M''_x$  and  $L'_x$  act trivially on the intersection.

We choose the following basis in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= (0, -1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_2 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-1}), \\ v_3 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-0}), \\ v_4 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\omega}), \\ v_5 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\bar{\omega}}), \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
w_1 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\
w_2 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_1), \\
w_3 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0), \\
w_4 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_\omega), \\
w_5 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{\bar{\omega}}).
\end{aligned}$$

The first five vectors form a basis of  $U \cap \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ . Those  $M_x$  with  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$  act trivially on  $U \cap \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ . With respect to the basis  $(v_1, \dots, v_5)$  we obtain all the elementary transvections with non-zero off-diagonal entry in the first row or the first column by taking  $M_{\lambda e_i}$  for  $i \in \{\bar{\omega}, \omega, 0, 1\}$  and  $L_{\lambda e_i}$  where  $i \in \{-1, -0, -\omega, -\bar{\omega}\}$ , which generate  $\text{SL}_5(F)$ .

Now we are going back to the action on the 10-space. With respect to the chosen basis the elements  $M_x$  with  $x \in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_\omega, e_0, e_1 \rangle$  and  $L_x$  with  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$  act as matrices of the form

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c} S & 0 \\ \hline 0 & (S^{-1})^\top \end{array} \right],$$

Indeed, for example  $L_{\lambda e_{-1}}$  has the following matrix form:

$$\begin{bmatrix}
1 & \lambda & . & . & . & . & . & . & . & . \\
. & 1 & . & . & . & . & . & . & . & . \\
. & . & 1 & . & . & . & . & . & . & . \\
. & . & . & 1 & . & . & . & . & . & . \\
. & . & . & . & 1 & . & . & . & . & . \\
. & . & . & . & . & 1 & . & . & . & . \\
. & . & . & . & . & -\lambda & 1 & . & . & . \\
. & . & . & . & . & . & . & 1 & . & . \\
. & . & . & . & . & . & . & . & 1 & . \\
. & . & . & . & . & . & . & . & . & 1
\end{bmatrix}.$$

The map  $S \mapsto (S^{-1})^\top$  is an automorphism of  $\text{SL}_5(F)$  of duality type. Recall that the action generated by the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$ , where  $x$  ranges through  $\mathbb{O}$ , on the whole 27-space  $\mathbb{J}$  has a non-trivial kernel, generated by the element  $P_{-1}$ , when the characteristic of the field is not 2. In the current situation we do not get this central involution as those  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  which generate  $\text{SL}_5(F)$  fix the vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)$  in the 16-space



$\mathbb{J}_{16}^{AB}$ .

The elements  $M_x$  with  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$  act trivially on  $U \cap \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , but on the whole 10-space they act as

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c} I_5 & 0 \\ \hline A & I_5 \end{array} \right],$$

where  $A$  is a  $5 \times 5$  matrix. For instance, the element  $M_{\lambda e_{-1}}$  is represented by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \lambda & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ -\lambda & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

With respect to our chosen basis, the inner product in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  has the form

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c} 0 & -I_5 \\ \hline -I_5 & 0 \end{array} \right],$$

and so we can derive the conditions on the matrix  $A$ :

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c} I_5 & 0 \\ \hline A & I_5 \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c} 0 & -I_5 \\ \hline -I_5 & 0 \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c} I_5 & A^\top \\ \hline 0 & I_5 \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c} 0 & -I_5 \\ \hline -I_5 & -(A + A^\top) \end{array} \right].$$

It follows that  $A + A^\top = 0$ . In characteristic other than 2 this also implies that the diagonal entries in  $A$  are zero. In characteristic 2 we need to consider the quadratic form to obtain the same result.

Let  $g$  be an element of the joint stabiliser represented by the matrix

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c} I_5 & 0 \\ \hline A & I_5 \end{array} \right],$$

with respect to the basis  $v_1, \dots, v_5, w_1, \dots, w_5$ . We have  $v_i^g = v_i$  and  $w_i^g = w_i + \sum_j A_{ij} v_j$  for all  $i$  such that  $1 \leq i \leq 5$ . It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{10}(w_i^g) &= Q_{10}(w_i + A_{i1}v_1 + \dots + A_{i5}v_5) \\ &= Q_{10}(w_i) + \langle w_i, A_{i1}v_1 + \dots + A_{i5}v_5 \rangle + Q_{10}(A_{i1}v_1 + \dots + A_{i5}v_5) \\ &= \langle w_i, A_{i1}v_1 + \dots + A_{i5}v_5 \rangle = -A_{ii}, \end{aligned}$$

so we indeed have  $A_{ii} = 0$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 5$ .

Regardless of characteristic, such matrices  $A$  reside in a 10-dimensional  $F$ -space. In fact, all such matrices span a 10-dimensional  $F$ -space  $W$ , and the spanning set can be obtained, for example, by taking relevant  $5 \times 5$  blocks in the  $10 \times 10$  matrices, representing the following elements:

$$\begin{array}{ll} M_{e_{-1}}, & (L_{e_{-\omega}})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-1}} \cdot L_{e_{-\omega}}, \\ M_{e_{-0}}, & (L_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-1}} \cdot L_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}}, \\ M_{e_{-\omega}}, & (L_{e_{-\omega}})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-0}} \cdot L_{e_{-\omega}}, \\ M_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}}, & (L_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-0}} \cdot L_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}}, \\ (L_{e_0})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-1}} \cdot L_{e_0}, & (L_{e_{-\omega}})^{-1} \cdot M_{e_{-\bar{\omega}}} \cdot L_{e_{-\omega}}. \end{array}$$

Now,  $V$ , spanned by  $v_1, \dots, v_5$ , is a  $FG$ -module with  $G = \text{SL}_5(F)$ . We identify the 25-space spanned by the  $5 \times 5$  matrices  $E_{ij}$  (having 1 as the  $(i, j)$ -entry and zeroes in all other positions) with the tensor square  $V \otimes V$  by establishing an isomorphism  $\varphi : E_{ij} \mapsto v_i \otimes v_j$  and extending by linearity. An arbitrary element  $g$  of  $\text{SL}_5(F)$  acts on these matrices via the map  $E_{ij} \mapsto S^\top E_{ij} S$  for some  $5 \times 5$  matrix  $S$ , and we have

$$\begin{aligned} (v_i \otimes v_j)^g &= \varphi(E_{ij}^g) = \varphi\left(\sum_{r,s} S_{ir} S_{js} E_{rs}\right) = \sum_{r,s} S_{ir} S_{js} (v_r \otimes v_s) \\ &= \sum_{r,s} (S_{ir} v_r) \otimes (S_{js} v_s) = (e_i S) \otimes (e_j S). \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\varphi$  is indeed an isomorphism of  $FG$ -modules. The elements  $E_{ij} - E_{ji}$  form a spanning set for the 10-space  $W$ , defined earlier, and so the image of  $W$  under the isomorphism  $\varphi$  is  $\bigwedge^2(V)$ , as a submodule of  $V \otimes V$ . Thus, we have the action of  $\mathrm{SL}_5(F)$  on  $\bigwedge^2(V) \cong F^{10}$ .

The elements  $P_u$  and  $P'_u$  act on the white vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)$  in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} P_u &: (0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, 0 \mid ue_0N(u)^{-1}, 0, 0), \\ P'_u &: (0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, 0 \mid \bar{u}e_0\bar{u}N(u)^{-1}, 0, 0). \end{aligned}$$

Taking  $u = \lambda \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}$  where  $\lambda \in F$  for both  $P_u$  and  $P'_u$ , we obtain the action of the group of shape  $F^\times.F^\times$ , which preserves the white point  $\langle(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)\rangle$ .

So far we have shown that the joint stabiliser is no bigger than the group of shape  $F^{16}:F^{10}:\mathrm{SL}_5(F).F^\times.F^\times$ . We notice that  $M''_x$  with  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$  and  $L'_y$  with  $y \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle$  preserve the white point  $\langle(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)\rangle$ . These elements generate an abelian group isomorphic to  $F^{11}$ . Let now  $M''_x \cdot L'_x$  be a general element in  $F^{16}$ . It sends  $(0, 0, 0 \mid e_0, 0, 0)$  to  $(0, T(e_0y), 0 \mid e_0, 0, \bar{x}e_{-0})$ , so we get the following conditions on  $x$  and  $y$ :

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \bar{x}e_{-0} &= 0, \\ T(e_0y) &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

The first condition implies that  $\bar{x}e_0 \in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_0, e_1 \rangle$ , so  $x \in \langle e_{-1}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle$ . From the second condition we derive  $y \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle$ , so indeed the joint stabiliser is  $F^{11}:F^{10}:\mathrm{SL}_5(F).F^\times.F^\times$ .  $\square$

We have already seen the proof of the following lemma (Theorem 2.4.2), so we just state the result here.

**Lemma 2.4.6.** *The joint stabiliser in  $\mathrm{SE}_6(F)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  and  $\langle(0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)\rangle$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$\mathrm{Spin}_{10}^+(F).F^\times. \tag{2.43}$$

## 2.5 Simplicity of $E_6(F)$

The construction we have obtained also allows us to show that the group  $E_6(F)$  is indeed simple without any references to Lie theory. The classical way of showing the simplicity of certain groups is the following lemma, originally proved in [Iwa41].

**Lemma 2.5.1** (Iwasawa). *If  $G$  is a perfect group acting faithfully and primitively on a set  $\Omega$ , and the point stabilizer  $H$  has a normal abelian subgroup  $A$  whose conjugates generate  $G$ , then  $G$  is simple.*

First, we show that the subgroup of  $SE_6(F)$  stabilising all the white points simultaneously acts on  $\mathbb{J}$  by scalar multiplications, and hence the action of  $E_6(F)$  on the set of white points is faithful.

**Lemma 2.5.2.** *The subgroup in  $SE_6(F)$  stabilising simultaneously all white points is the group of scalars.*

*Proof.* Consider the action of this stabiliser on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  and pick the basis

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_2 &= (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_{i+2} &= (a_i, b_i, 0 \mid 0, 0, C_i), \end{aligned} \tag{2.44}$$

where  $1 \leq i \leq 8$  and  $C_i \bar{C}_i = a_i b_i$ . Since in particular we stabilise  $\langle v_1 \rangle, \dots, \langle v_{10} \rangle$ , the action on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{cAB}$  is that of a  $10 \times 10$  diagonal matrix  $\text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{10})$  with respect to the basis  $\{v_1, \dots, v_{10}\}$ . Consider a vector  $v = (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$ , where  $C = C_1 + \dots + C_8$  and  $a, b$  are such that  $v$  is white, i.e.  $C \bar{C} = ab$ . Now, if  $F \neq \mathbb{F}_2$ , we can choose  $a, b \in F$  in such a way that  $v$  can be written as a linear combination  $v = \alpha v_1 + \beta v_2 + v_3 + \dots + v_{10}$  with  $\alpha \neq 0$ . The stabiliser of all white point maps  $v$  to  $\lambda v$  for some non-zero  $\lambda \in F$ , so this ensures that  $\lambda = \lambda_1 = \lambda_3 = \dots = \lambda_{10}$ . We now adjust the chosen values of  $a$  and  $b$  to obtain a linear combination with  $\beta \neq 0$ , and so  $\lambda = \lambda_2 = \lambda_3 = \dots = \lambda_{10}$ . It follows that the action on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is just the multiplication by  $\lambda$ .

When  $F = \mathbb{F}_2$ , we take  $\mathbb{O}$  to be the split octonion algebra with our favourite basis

$\{e_i \mid i \in \pm\{0, 1, \omega, \overline{\omega}\}\}$ . For the 10-space  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  we choose the basis

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_2 &= (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_{i+2} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_i), \end{aligned} \tag{2.45}$$

and then proceed in the same manner. The vector  $v = v_1 + \cdots + v_{10}$  is white and since there is a single choice for a non-zero scalar in  $\mathbb{F}_2$ , it is being fixed and the action on the whole 10-space in this case is that of  $\text{diag}(1, \dots, 1)$ .

Now, by using the triality element, we map  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  to  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{bcA}$  and further to  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{caB}$  and so we obtain that the stabiliser of all white points acts on  $\mathbb{J}$  by scalar multiplications. That is, the stabiliser of all the white points is trivial in  $E_6(F)$ .  $\square$

From Lemma 2.3.5 we know that the action of  $E_6(F)$  on the white points is primitive. We need to show that the group is perfect.

**Lemma 2.5.3.** *The group  $SE_6(F)$  is perfect.*

*Proof.* This does not present great difficulties. A very straightforward computation shows that

$$\begin{aligned} (L_{-1}'')^{-1} \cdot L_x' \cdot L_{-1}'' \cdot (L_x')^{-1} &\text{ acts as } M_x, \\ (L_{-1}')^{-1} \cdot L_x'' \cdot L_{-1}' \cdot (L_x'')^{-1} &\text{ acts as } M_x', \\ (L_{-1}')^{-1} \cdot L_x \cdot L_{-1}' \cdot (L_x)^{-1} &\text{ acts as } M_x'', \\ (M_{-1}')^{-1} \cdot M_x'' \cdot M_{-1}' \cdot (M_x'')^{-1} &\text{ acts as } L_x, \\ (M_{-1}'')^{-1} \cdot M_x' \cdot M_{-1}'' \cdot (M_x')^{-1} &\text{ acts as } L_x', \\ (M_{-1})^{-1} \cdot M_x' \cdot M_{-1} \cdot (M_x')^{-1} &\text{ acts as } L_x'', \end{aligned}$$

where as before  $A \cdot B$  is understood as the product of the actions by the matrices  $A$  and  $B$ . Hence, every generator is in fact a commutator.  $\square$

Finally, by taking  $A = F^{16}$  in the Iwasawa's Lemma (Lemma 2.5.1) we obtain the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.5.4.** *The group  $E_6(F)$  is simple.*

## 2.6 The case of a finite field

In this section  $F$  is a finite field of  $q$  elements, that is,  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ . Our aim is to count the white points in this case, and hence find the group order.

**Theorem 2.6.1.** *If  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ , then there are precisely*

$$\frac{(q^{12} - 1)(q^9 - 1)}{(q^4 - 1)} \quad (2.46)$$

white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}$ .

*Proof.* In the proof we study the series of subspaces

$$0 < \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC} < \mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC} < \mathbb{J}.$$

First,  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \in \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is white if and only if  $ab - C\bar{C} = 0$ . We notice that  $ab - C\bar{C}$  is a quadratic form of *plus* type defined on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , so there are  $(q^5 - 1)(q^4 + 1)$  white vectors in this subspace.

Next, suppose  $(a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \in \mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC}$  is white. Then  $C = \bar{B}\bar{A}c^{-1}$ ,  $b = A\bar{A}c^{-1}$  and  $a = B\bar{B}c^{-1}$ . We may choose  $A, B, c$  to be arbitrary (with  $c \neq 0$ ), so there are  $q^{16}(q - 1)$  white vectors in  $\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC}$ .

Finally, we investigate the white vectors  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C) \in \mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . The conditions for such a vector to be white take the following form:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A\bar{A} &= B\bar{B} = AB = 0, \\ C\bar{C} &= ab, \\ BC &= a\bar{A}, \\ CA &= b\bar{B}. \end{aligned} \right\}. \quad (2.47)$$

Note that we also require  $(A, B) \neq (0, 0)$ . In case  $A = 0$ ,  $B \neq 0$  we apply  $\delta$  followed by  $\tau$  to  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  in order to obtain a vector of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  with  $A \neq 0$ . Note that the values of  $a, b, A, B, C$  are not the same as in the initial Albert vector. So, assuming  $A \neq 0$ , we have  $AB = 0$  exactly when  $B$  resides in a particular 4-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{O}$  and any such  $B$  satisfies  $B\bar{B} = 0$ . For any octonion  $x$ , the action by the element  $L_x$  establishes a bijection between the white vectors of the form

$(*, *, 0 \mid A, B, *)$  and those of the form  $(*, *, 0 \mid A, B + \bar{A}x, *)$ . Left-multiplication by  $\bar{A}$  annihilates a 4-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{O}$  (Proposition 1.5.2), so by the rank-nullity theorem we conclude that the image  $\mathcal{A} = \{\bar{A}x \mid x \in \mathbb{O}\}$  is also 4-dimensional. Note that  $A(\bar{A}x) = (A\bar{A})x = 0$ , for any  $x \in \mathbb{O}$ , so  $\mathcal{A}$  is the 4-space of all octonions left-annihilated by  $A$ , and therefore it contains  $-B$ . Now we pick an octonion  $x$  such that  $\bar{A}x = -B$  to obtain the bijection between the white vectors of the form  $(*, *, 0 \mid A, B, *)$  with  $A \neq 0$  and those of the form  $(*, *, 0 \mid A, 0, *)$ . An Albert vector  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, 0, C)$  is white if and only if  $A\bar{A} = C\bar{C} = CA = 0$  and  $a = 0$ , with no dependence on  $b$ . As before,  $C$  lies in a particular 4-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{O}$ , hence  $(0, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  lies in a particular 5-dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , so for any choice of the pair  $(A, B)$  there are  $q^5$  white vectors. If  $A \neq 0$ , then there are  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  choices for  $A$ , and for each of these  $q^4$  choices for  $B$ . If  $A = 0$ , we have  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  choices for  $B$ . It follows that in total there are

$$q^5(q^4(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1) + (q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)) = q^5(q^8 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$$

white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ .

The calculations above give the numbers of white vectors in certain subsets of  $\mathbb{J}$  as shown in the following table.

subset	$\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$	$\mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$	$\mathbb{J} \setminus \mathbb{J}_{26}^{abABC}$
number of white vectors	$(q^5 - 1)(q^4 + 1)$	$q^5(q^8 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$	$q^{16}(q - 1)$

Adding these numbers gives the result. □

**Corollary 2.6.2.** *There are precisely*

$$\frac{(q^{12} - 1)(q^9 - 1)}{(q^4 - 1)(q - 1)} \tag{2.48}$$

white points in the case  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ .

Theorem 2.3.8 allows us to find the stabiliser of a white point which in our case is a group of shape  $q^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(q)$ . As a consequence, we now have:

$$|\text{SE}_6(q)| = q^{36}(q^{12} - 1)(q^9 - 1)(q^8 - 1)(q^6 - 1)(q^5 - 1)(q^2 - 1). \tag{2.49}$$

We obtain  $E_6(q)$  as the quotient of  $SE_6(q)$  by any scalars it contains. Note that  $SE_6(q)$  contains non-trivial scalars if and only if  $q \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ , so

$$|E_6(q)| = \frac{1}{\gcd(3, q-1)} q^{36} (q^{12} - 1)(q^9 - 1)(q^8 - 1)(q^6 - 1)(q^5 - 1)(q^2 - 1). \quad (2.50)$$

We can also invoke Proposition 2.3.7 to count totally white lines in the finite case.

**Proposition 2.6.3.** *Given any white point  $\langle W \rangle$ ,*

- (i) *there are exactly  $q(q^8 - 1)(q^3 + 1)/(q - 1)$  white points  $\langle X \rangle$  such that all points in  $\langle W, X \rangle$  are white;*
- (ii) *there are exactly  $q^8(q^4 + 1)(q^5 - 1)/(q - 1)$  white points  $\langle Y \rangle$  such that  $\langle W, Y \rangle$  contains only two white points.*

*Proof.* Without loss of generality assume  $W = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ . By Proposition 2.3.7 we need to count the white points spanned by the vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . Consider a general white vector  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, 0) \in \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . The whiteness conditions are  $A\bar{A} = B\bar{B} = 0 = AB$ . We distinguish two cases. If  $A \neq 0$ , then there are  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  choices for  $A$ . For each of these there are  $q^4$  choices for  $B$  and  $q$  choices for  $c$ . Therefore, there are  $q^5(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  with  $A \neq 0$ . In case  $A = 0$  we require  $B \neq 0$ , so there are  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  choices for  $B$  and  $q$  choices for  $c$ , giving  $q(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$  white vectors. Adding these two values together, we get

$$q^5(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1) + q(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1) = q(q^8 - 1)(q^3 + 1)$$

white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$ . To find the number of totally white lines, we divide this value by  $q - 1$ .

Obviously, all white points not already counted have the second property, so there are

$$\frac{(q^9 - 1)(q^{12} - 1)}{(q^4 - 1)(q - 1)} - \frac{q(q^8 - 1)(q^3 + 1)}{(q - 1)} - 1 = \frac{q^8(q^4 + 1)(q^5 - 1)}{(q - 1)}$$

choices for  $\langle Y \rangle$ . Note that we subtract 1 because we want  $\langle W \rangle \neq \langle Y \rangle$ .  $\square$



## 2.7 Arbitrary octonion algebras

Now that we have constructed the group of type  $E_6$  over an arbitrary field, it is to be emphasised that our construction depends on the fact that  $\mathbb{O}$  has to be split. Namely, it is a vital requirement in the proof of Theorem 2.3.8. This completely covers the possibilities in case  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ , but while it was possible to prove many results independently of the choice of  $\mathbb{O}$ , there are still some questions to answer when  $\mathbb{O}$  happens to be non-split. Note that a split octonion algebra exists over any field, so our construction is safe.

The main problem is to be able to tell whether the actions of the matrices  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  generate  $\Omega(\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}, Q_{10})$ . At this stage it is possible to prove the following proposition.

**Proposition 2.7.1.** *The actions of the elements  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  where  $x$  ranges through a non-split octonion algebra  $\mathbb{O}$ , generate at most a group of type  $\Omega(\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}, Q_{10})$ .*

*Proof.* To verify this we show that the elements encoded by  $M_x$  and  $L_x$  have the correct spinor norm. Recall that  $M_x$  acts on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  in the following way:

$$M_x : (a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (a, b + aN(x) + T(\bar{x}C), 0 \mid 0, 0, C + ax).$$

Consider two Albert vectors  $v = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, x)$  and  $w = (0, x\bar{x}, 0 \mid 0, 0, x)$ . Reflexion in  $v$  sends a vector  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  to

$$(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) - \frac{T(C\bar{x})}{N(x)} \cdot (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, x) = \left( a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C - \frac{T(C\bar{x})}{N(x)}x \right).$$

We then reflect the result in  $w$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C - \frac{T(C\bar{x})}{N(x)}x \right) - \frac{-T(C\bar{x}) - ax\bar{x}}{N(x)} \cdot (0, x\bar{x}, 0 \mid 0, 0, x) \\ &= \left( a, b + ax\bar{x} + T(C\bar{x}), 0 \mid 0, 0, C - \frac{T(C\bar{x})}{N(x)}x + \frac{T(C\bar{x})}{N(x)}x + a\frac{x\bar{x}}{N(x)}x \right) \\ &= (a, b + aN(x) + T(C\bar{x}), 0 \mid 0, 0, C + ax). \end{aligned}$$

Note that the action of  $M_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$  is the same as the composition of reflexions in  $v$  and  $w$ . We find  $Q_{10}(v) = Q_{10}(w) = N(x)$  and conclude that  $M_x$  acts as an element of

$\Omega(\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}, \mathbb{Q}_{10})$ .

For the elements  $L_x$  we consider the reflexions in vectors  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, \bar{x})$  and  $(x\bar{x}, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, \bar{x})$  to obtain the same conclusion.  $\square$

Next, suppose that  $V$  is a vector space over  $F$  with a quadratic form  $Q$ , such that  $V = \langle e, f \rangle \oplus W$ , where  $(e, f)$  is a hyperbolic pair and  $W = \langle e, f \rangle^\perp$ . Consider an element  $g$  in  $\text{CGO}(V, Q)$  which scales  $Q$  by some  $\lambda \neq 0$ . Then  $V = \langle e^g, f^g \rangle \oplus W^g$  and  $\langle e^g, f^g \rangle$  is isometric to  $\langle e, f \rangle$ . Therefore,  $W^g$  is isometric to  $W$ , and so there exists an isometry  $h$  in  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  such that  $\langle e^g, f^g \rangle^h = \langle e, f \rangle$ . It follows that  $(W^g)^h = W$ , and  $gh$  is a  $\lambda$ -scaling of  $Q$  which fixes  $\langle e, f \rangle$  and  $W$ . Hence,  $gh$  is a  $\lambda$ -scaling of  $Q_W$ .

Consider a  $\lambda$ -similarity on  $\mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}_F$  that sends  $1_{\mathbb{O}}$  to some  $u \in \mathbb{O}$ . Then it gives rise to an element in the stabiliser of a white point which scales  $Q_8$  by  $N(u)$ . In other words, we have shown the following.

**Proposition 2.7.2.** *If  $\mathbb{O}$  is an arbitrary octonion algebra over  $F$ , then the elements in the stabiliser of a white point can only scale a white vector by  $\lambda$ , where  $\lambda \in F$  is such that there exists  $u \in \mathbb{O}$  with  $N(u) = \lambda$ .*

It is easy to check that all such scalings are possible. For example, the elements  $P'_{u^{-1}}$ , defined in (2.37), do the job.

## Chapter 3

# Groups of type ${}^2E_6$

In this chapter consider the possibility to adopting our technique to the construction of the groups of type  ${}^2E_6$ . Although this “twisted” case proves to be more difficult, especially with the arbitrary quadratic field extensions, we were still able to investigate some of the structure and establish several important results.

### 3.1 Quadratic field extensions

Let  $F$  and  $K$  be two fields such that  $F$  is a subfield of  $K$ . We say that  $K$  is an *extension field* of  $F$ . The *degree* of  $K$  over  $F$ , denoted by  $[K : F]$ , is the dimension of  $K$  as a vector space over  $F$ . We denote the extension of  $F$  by  $K$  as  $K : F$ .

A non-zero polynomial  $f \in F[x]$  is called *separable*, if each root of  $f$  has multiplicity 1. If  $\alpha \in F$  is algebraic, that is,  $\alpha$  is a root of some polynomial  $g \in F[x]$ , then  $\alpha$  is called *separable* if its minimal polynomial is separable.

We have defined what it means for a field element and a polynomial to be separable. Suppose that  $[K : F]$  is finite, then  $K : F$  is a *separable* extension, if every element of  $K$  is separable over  $F$ . We also say that  $K : F$  is *normal*, if every irreducible polynomial  $f \in F[x]$  that has a root in  $K$  splits into linear factors in  $K[x]$ . An extension  $K : F$  which is normal, separable, and of finite degree is called a *Galois extension*. We are not going into too much detail here, for there are various well-known references on the theory of field extensions, of very high quality, for instance, [Cam98], [DF03], [Lan05], or [Ste03]. In this chapter we are interested in Galois extensions of degree 2. In case

when  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$ , we have  $|K| = q^2$ , and so  $K = \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$  (see, for example, [Moo96]).

Given a field extension  $K : F$ , we define the *Galois group* of  $K$  over  $F$ , denoted  $\text{Gal}(K : F)$ , to be the group of automorphisms of  $K$  that fix  $F$  elementwise. In other words,

$$\text{Gal}(K : F) = \{ \sigma \in \text{Aut}(K) \mid \alpha^\sigma = \alpha \text{ for all } \alpha \in F \}. \quad (3.1)$$

The most important result for us here is the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.1.1.** *Let  $K : F$  be a Galois extension. Then*

$$|\text{Gal}(K : F)| = [K : F]. \quad (3.2)$$

It follows that in case  $[K : F] = 2$  there is a unique non-trivial field automorphism  $\sigma : K \rightarrow K$ , fixing  $F$  elementwise. If  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$  and  $K = \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ , then  $\sigma$  takes the form  $\sigma : \lambda \mapsto \lambda^q$ .

## 3.2 Spaces with two forms

In this section we describe the results from [Asc87, Section 11], which will be of great importance to us in the further discussion.

Let  $K : F$  be a Galois extension of degree 2, and let  $s$  be a  $K$ -automorphism with  $F$  being its fixed field. Let also  $V$  be a  $2m$ -dimensional vector space over  $K$  with a quadratic form  $Q$  and a conjugate-symmetric sesquilinear form  $B : V \times V \rightarrow K$ , defined with respect to  $\sigma$ . Denote by  $f$  the polar form of  $Q$ , and suppose that  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis of  $V$  with respect to  $f$ , consisting of the elements  $e_1, \dots, e_m, f_1, \dots, f_m$ , so that

$$Q(e_i) = Q(f_i) = 0, \quad f(e_i, f_i) = 1, \quad (3.3)$$

and  $f(e_i, e_j) = f(f_i, f_j) = 0 = f(e_i, f_j)$  for  $i \neq j$ . The above said means that  $(V, Q)$  is a hyperbolic orthogonal space. Denote by  $G$  the maximal amongst all the subgroups of  $\text{GO}(V, Q)$  which preserve  $B$ . If  $U$  is a subspace of  $V$ , then we denote the restrictions of  $f$  and  $B$  on  $U$  as  $f_U$  and  $B_U$  respectively. We say that an element  $v \in V$  is *singular isotropic*, if  $Q(v) = B(v, v) = 0$ .

**Definition 3.2.1.** *A  $(Q, B)$ -subspace of  $V$  is an  $F$ -subspace  $U$  of  $V$  such that  $V = U \otimes_F K$ ,*

$f_U = B_U$  is an  $F$ -form on  $U$ , and  $Q_U$  is a non-degenerate quadratic form on  $U$  of Witt index at least 2.

**Proposition 3.2.2** ((10.3) in [Asc87]). *If  $U$  is a  $(Q, B)$ -subspace of  $V$ , then it is the unique  $(Q, B)$ -subspace of  $V$ , and  $G = \text{GO}(U, Q)$ .*

**Proposition 3.2.3** ((10.5) in [Asc87]). *Let  $U$  be a  $(Q, B)$ -subspace of  $V$  of Witt index at least 2. Fix  $\lambda \in K \setminus F$ . The group  $G$  has precisely two orbits on singular isotropic points with representatives  $\langle u \rangle$  and  $\langle u + \lambda v \rangle$ , where  $u, v \in U$  and  $\langle u, v \rangle$  is a singular line.*

### 3.3 Hermitean form in $\mathbb{J}$ and the group ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$

Suppose as before  $K : F$  is a quadratic Galois extension with  $F$  being a fixed field of a  $K$ -automorphism  $\sigma$ . In this chapter  $\mathbb{O}_F$  will always be a split octonion algebra over  $F$  and  $\mathbb{O}_K = \mathbb{O}_F \otimes_F K$ . We also use the same basis  $\{e_i \mid i \in \pm I\}$  as in Section 1.6.

We slightly abuse the notation here denoting by  $\sigma$  also the automorphism of  $\mathbb{O}_K$  induced by the field automorphism  $\sigma$ :

$$\left( \sum_{i \in \pm I} \lambda_i e_i \right)^\sigma = \sum_{i \in \pm I} \lambda_i^\sigma e_i. \quad (3.4)$$

This, however, should not create any difficulties for the reader. Consider the following Hermitean form defined on the elements of  $\mathbb{O}_K$ :

$$h(x) = A\bar{A}^\sigma + A^\sigma \bar{A} = T(A\bar{A}^\sigma). \quad (3.5)$$

On the Albert space  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_K$  this induces the Hermitean form  $H$ , where

$$H((a, b, c \mid A, B, C)) = aa^\sigma + bb^\sigma + cc^\sigma + T(A\bar{A}^\sigma + B\bar{B}^\sigma + C\bar{C}^\sigma). \quad (3.6)$$

As usual, the sesquilinear form associated with  $H$  is obtained by polarising the Hermitean form:

$$\langle X, Y \rangle_H = H(X + Y) - H(X) - H(Y). \quad (3.7)$$

Using the construction from previous chapter, we obtain the group  $\text{SE}_6(K)$  in the usual way. Now define the group  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  as the subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$  which preserves

H. In case  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$  and  $K = \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ , we denote this by  ${}^2\text{SE}_6(q)$ . As before, the group  ${}^2\text{E}_6^K(F)$  is defined as the quotient of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  by its centre.

### 3.4 Some elements of ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$

Let  $X = (a, b, c \mid A, B, C)$  be an arbitrary element of  $\mathbb{J} = \mathbb{J}_K$ . First of all we notice that the matrices  $\delta$  and  $\tau$  preserve Hermitean form, so they encode the elements of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ .

The elements  $P_u$  with  $u$  written over the small field and such that  $N(u) = 1$  are also of interest.

**Lemma 3.4.1.** *The actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of the elements  $P_u = \text{diag}(u, \bar{u}, 1)$  such that  $u \in \mathbb{O}_F$  and  $N(u) = 1$  preserve H.*

*Proof.* Recall that the action on  $\mathbb{J}$  is given by

$$P_u : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (a, b, c \mid uA, Bu, \bar{u}C\bar{u}),$$

so the individual terms are being mapped in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} aa^\sigma &\mapsto aa^\sigma, \\ bb^\sigma &\mapsto bb^\sigma, \\ cc^\sigma &\mapsto cc^\sigma, \\ T(A\bar{A}^\sigma) &\mapsto T((uA)(\bar{A}^\sigma \bar{u})), \\ T(B\bar{B}^\sigma) &\mapsto T((Bu)(\bar{u}\bar{B}^\sigma)), \\ T(\bar{u}C\bar{u}) &\mapsto T((\bar{u}C\bar{u})(u\bar{C}^\sigma u)). \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $u^\sigma = u$  since  $u \in \mathbb{O}_F$ . We find

$$\begin{aligned} T((uA)(\bar{A}^\sigma \bar{u})) &= T(((uA)\bar{A}^\sigma)\bar{u}) = T(\bar{u}((uA)\bar{A}^\sigma)) \\ &= T((\bar{u}(uA))\bar{A}^\sigma) = T(((\bar{u}u)A)\bar{A}^\sigma) = T(A\bar{A}^\sigma). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$T((Bu)(\bar{u}\bar{B}^\sigma)) = T(((Bu)\bar{u})\bar{B}^\sigma) = T((B(u\bar{u}))\bar{B}^\sigma) = T(B\bar{B}^\sigma).$$

For the last term we have

$$T((\bar{u}C\bar{u})(u\bar{C}^\sigma u)) = \langle \bar{u}C\bar{u}, \bar{u}C^\sigma \bar{u} \rangle.$$

Now, as we know from Lemma 2.2.2, the map  $x \mapsto \bar{u}x\bar{u}$  is a product of two reflexions, hence,

$$\langle \bar{u}C\bar{u}, \bar{u}C^\sigma \bar{u} \rangle = \langle C, C^\sigma \rangle = T(C\bar{C}^\sigma).$$

□

**Lemma 3.4.2.** *Let  $x \in \mathbb{O}_K$  be such that  $\bar{x}^\sigma x = x\bar{x}^\sigma = 0$ . Then  $x\bar{x} = 0$ .*

*Proof.* If  $x = 0$ , then the result is trivial. Assume  $x$  is non-zero,  $\bar{x}^\sigma x = x\bar{x}^\sigma = 0$ . If  $x\bar{x} \neq 0$ , then  $x$  is invertible, and so  $\bar{x}^\sigma = 0$ , which implies  $x = 0$ , a contradiction. □

Consider the matrices

$$N_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x & 0 \\ -\bar{x}^\sigma & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad N'_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & x \\ 0 & -\bar{x}^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad N''_x = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -\bar{x}^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ x & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.8)$$

where  $x\bar{x}^\sigma = \bar{x}^\sigma x = 0$  and  $x, \bar{x}^\sigma$  generate a sociable subalgebra. It is easy to see that these encode elements of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$ . Indeed,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & x \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -\bar{x}^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 - x\bar{x}^\sigma & x \\ -\bar{x}^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x \\ -\bar{x}^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.9)$$

So, the elements  $N_x$ ,  $N'_x$ , and  $N''_x$  preserve the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant. To verify that they preserve  $H$ , we look at the action on  $\mathbb{J}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} N_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (a - T(C\bar{x}^\sigma), b + T(\bar{C}x), c \mid \\ &\quad \mid A + \bar{x}\bar{B}, B - \bar{A}\bar{x}^\sigma, C - x^\sigma \bar{C}x + ax - bx^\sigma), \\ N'_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (a, b - T(A\bar{x}^\sigma), c + T(\bar{A}x) \mid \\ &\quad \mid A - x^\sigma \bar{A}x + bx - cx^\sigma, B + \bar{x}\bar{C}, C - \bar{B}\bar{x}^\sigma), \\ N''_x : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (a + T(\bar{B}x), b, c - T(B\bar{x}^\sigma) \mid \\ &\quad \mid A - \bar{C}\bar{x}^\sigma, B - x^\sigma \bar{B}x + cx - ax^\sigma, C + \bar{x}\bar{A}). \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

We need to prove an auxiliary lemma.

**Lemma 3.4.3.** *Suppose that  $x, y, z \in \mathbb{O}_F$  with  $x\bar{x} = 0$ . Then*

$$(i) \quad x T(yx) = x(yx),$$

$$(ii) \quad T((xy)(z\bar{x})) = 0.$$

*Proof.*

$$(i) \quad x T(yx) = x(yx + \bar{x}\bar{y}) = x(yx) + x(\bar{x}\bar{y}) = x(yx) + (x\bar{x})\bar{y} = x(yx),$$

$$(ii) \quad T((xy)(z\bar{x})) = T((z\bar{x})(xy)) = T(((z\bar{x})x)y) = T(z(x\bar{x})y) = 0. \quad \square$$

Obviously, it is enough to verify that the elements  $N_x$  preserve the Hermitean form  $H$ . The individual terms in  $H(X) = aa^\sigma + bb^\sigma + cc^\sigma + T(A\bar{A}^\sigma + B\bar{B}^\sigma + C\bar{C}^\sigma)$  are being mapped in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} aa^\sigma &\mapsto aa^\sigma - a^\sigma T(C\bar{x}^\sigma) - a T(C^\sigma \bar{x}) + T(C^\sigma \bar{x}) T(C\bar{x}^\sigma), \\ bb^\sigma &\mapsto bb^\sigma + b^\sigma T(\bar{C}x) + b T(\bar{C}^\sigma x^\sigma) + T(\bar{C}x) T(\bar{C}^\sigma x^\sigma), \\ cc^\sigma &\mapsto cc^\sigma, \\ T(A\bar{A}^\sigma) &\mapsto T(A\bar{A}^\sigma) + T(AB^\sigma x^\sigma) + T(\bar{x}\bar{B}\bar{A}^\sigma) + T((\bar{x}\bar{B})(B^\sigma x^\sigma)), \\ T(B\bar{B}^\sigma) &\mapsto T(B\bar{B}^\sigma) - T(\bar{A}\bar{x}^\sigma \bar{B}^\sigma) - T(Bx\bar{A}^\sigma) + T((\bar{A}\bar{x}^\sigma)(x\bar{A}^\sigma)), \\ T(C\bar{C}^\sigma) &\mapsto T(C\bar{C}^\sigma) - T(C(\bar{x}^\sigma C^\sigma \bar{x})) - T(C^\sigma (\bar{x}C\bar{x}^\sigma)) + a T(x\bar{C}^\sigma) + \\ &\quad + a^\sigma T(C\bar{x}^\sigma) - b^\sigma T(C\bar{x}) - b T(x^\sigma \bar{C}^\sigma). \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

Using Lemmas 3.4.2 and 3.4.3, we get  $T((\bar{A}\bar{x}^\sigma)(x\bar{A}^\sigma)) = 0 = T((\bar{x}\bar{B})(B^\sigma x^\sigma))$ . Next, we also obtain  $T(C(\bar{x}^\sigma C^\sigma \bar{x})) = T(C\bar{x}^\sigma T(C^\sigma \bar{x})) = T(C^\sigma \bar{x}) T(C\bar{x}^\sigma)$ . Likewise, we get  $T(C^\sigma (\bar{x}C\bar{x}^\sigma)) = T((x^\sigma \bar{C}x)\bar{C}^\sigma) = T(\bar{C}^\sigma (x^\sigma \bar{C}x)) = T(\bar{C}^\sigma x^\sigma) T(\bar{C}x)$ . We see that all the terms except  $aa^\sigma, bb^\sigma, cc^\sigma$  and  $T(A\bar{A}^\sigma), T(B\bar{B}^\sigma), T(C\bar{C}^\sigma)$  cancel out, so it follows that the elements  $N_x$  preserve the Hermitean form. Hence, we have shown the following.

**Proposition 3.4.4.** *The matrices  $N_x, N'_x$ , and  $N''_x$  where  $x\bar{x}^\sigma = 0 = \bar{x}^\sigma x$  and  $x, \bar{x}^\sigma$  generate a sociable subalgebra, encode elements of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ .*

**Lemma 3.4.5.** *If  $x \in \mathbb{O}_K$  is such that  $x\bar{x}^\sigma = 0 = \bar{x}^\sigma x$ , with  $x, \bar{x}^\sigma$  generating a sociable subalgebra, then  $x^\sigma yx = xyx^\sigma$  for all  $y \in \mathbb{O}_K$ .*



Of great interest for us is the action of  $N_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . The rest of the section is devoted to proving the following result.

**Theorem 3.4.6.** *The actions of the elements  $N_x$  on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , where  $x \in \mathbb{O}_K$  is such that  $x\bar{x}^\sigma = 0 = \bar{x}^\sigma x$ , with  $x, \bar{x}^\sigma$  generating a sociable subalgebra, generate a group of type  $\Omega_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ , as  $x$  ranges through all suitable octonions in  $\mathbb{O}_K$ .*

We prove this theorem in the series of steps. First, consider the 4-dimensional  $K$ -subspace  $V_4$  of  $\mathbb{J}_K$ , spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  with  $C \in \langle e_{-1}, e_1 \rangle$ .

**Lemma 3.4.7.** *The actions of the elements  $N_{\lambda e_{\pm 1}}$  on  $V_4$ , where  $\lambda \in K$ , generate a group of type  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  of  $V_4$ , consisting of the vectors  $v_1, v_2, v_3$ , and  $v_4$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-1}), \\ v_2 &= (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_3 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ v_4 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_1). \end{aligned}$$

With respect to  $\mathcal{B}$  the  $4 \times 4$  matrices  $[N_{\lambda e_{-1}}]_{\mathcal{B}}$  and  $[N_{\lambda e_1}]_{\mathcal{B}}$  take the form

$$[N_{\lambda e_{-1}}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\lambda^\sigma & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\lambda\lambda^\sigma & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad [N_{\lambda e_1}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & -\lambda\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

To finish the proof we invoke Lemma C.1. □

Consider now a 6-dimensional  $F$ -space  $F_6$  with the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  consisting of the vectors  $v_5, v_3, v_2, v_1, v_4, v_6$ , in that order, where

$$\begin{aligned} v_5 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{\bar{\omega}}), \\ v_6 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\bar{\omega}}). \end{aligned} \tag{3.12}$$

We are interested in the group obtained by adjoining the action of  $N_{\mu e_{\bar{\omega}}}$  to  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ . With respect to the chosen basis, this new element has the following matrix form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\mu^\sigma & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \mu & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\mu\mu^\sigma & 0 & \mu & -\mu^\sigma & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.13)$$

We are interested in the vector  $u = (0, \mu, -\mu^\sigma, 0)$ . Recall that with respect to the basis  $v_3, v_2, v_1, v_4$  the elements  $N_{\lambda e_{-1}}$  and  $N_{\lambda e_1}$  are represented by the following matrices respectively:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\lambda^\sigma & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\lambda\lambda^\sigma & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & -\lambda\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.14)$$

The element  $N_{\lambda e_{-1}}$ , represented by the lower triangular matrix, sends our vector  $u$  to  $(-\lambda^\sigma\mu - \lambda\mu^\sigma, \mu, -\mu^\sigma, 0)$ , while  $N_{\lambda e_1}$ , represented by the upper triangular matrix, sends it to  $(0, \mu, -\mu^\sigma, \lambda\mu + \lambda^\sigma\mu^\sigma)$ . Note that  $\lambda^\sigma\mu + \lambda\mu^\sigma$  and  $\lambda\mu + \lambda^\sigma\mu^\sigma$  are the elements of  $F$  and the pair  $(\mu, -\mu^\sigma)$  generates  $K \cong F^2$  as  $\mu$  ranges through  $K$ . Hence, we have the action of  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$  on  $F^4$ , so by adjoining the element  $N_{\mu e_{\bar{\omega}}}$  to  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$  we have obtained a group of shape  $F^4 : \Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ . Adding also the action of  $N_{\lambda e_1}$  to this we obtain a group, which is transitive on isotropic vectors, and hence we obtain a copy of  $\Omega_6^{-,K}(F)$ .

We again use the results of Appendix A. Consider the 8-space  $F^8$  spanned by the Albert vectors  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  with  $C \in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle$ , and consider two isotropic vectors

$$\begin{aligned} u_\omega &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_\omega), \\ u_{-\omega} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\omega}), \end{aligned} \quad (3.15)$$

which are fixed by our copy of  $\Omega_6^{-,K}(F)$ . The action of  $N_{e_\omega}$  on  $F^8$  preserves  $u_\omega$  but not  $u_{-\omega}$ , and therefore adjoining this element to  $\Omega_6^{-,K}(F)$  we get the action of the group  $F^6 : \Omega_6^{-,K}(F)$ . The element  $N_{e_{-\omega}}$  does not preserve the 1-space  $\langle u_\omega \rangle$ , so appending it to

$F^6: \Omega_6^{-,K}(F)$ , we get the action of  $\Omega_8^{-,K}(F)$  on  $F^8$ .

Finally, we choose two isotropic Albert vectors

$$\begin{aligned} u_0 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0), \\ u_{-0} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-0}). \end{aligned} \tag{3.16}$$

in  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abc}$ . We adjoin the element  $N_{e_0}$  which fixes  $u_0$  but not  $u_{-0}$  to get the action of the group  $F^8: \Omega_8^{-,K}(F)$ . Appending to this the action of  $N_{e_{-0}}$  which does not preserve  $\langle u_0 \rangle$ , we obtain the action of  $\Omega_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ .

### 3.5 Action of ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ on white points

As in the case of  $\text{SE}_6$ , we are interested in the action on white points. We will, however, see that although  $\text{SE}_6$  acts transitively on white points, the action of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  splits into several orbits. We say that a non-zero Albert vector  $X$  is *isotropic*, if  $H(X) = 0$ .

We first consider some examples. Suppose  $X_1 = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0)$ . As we know (2.22), it determines a 17-space  $\{ (a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C) \mid e_0 A = B e_0 = T(e_0 \bar{C}) = 0 \}$ . A straightforward calculation shows that this 17-space  $U_1$  is spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_0, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{3.17}$$

We are also interested in the radical  $R_1$  of  $H$  inside this 17-space. In our case it is spanned by the vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_0 \rangle. \end{aligned} \tag{3.18}$$

In other words, our vector  $X_1$  determines the 17-space  $U_1$  and the 9-dimensional radical  $R_1$  of  $H$  in  $U_1$ . Note that  $X_1$  is isotropic with respect to  $H$ , and also  $X_1 \in R_1$ .

It turns out that there is another type of isotropic white vectors. Consider the

vector  $X_2 = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0 + \lambda e_1)$ , where  $\lambda \in K \setminus F$ . It again determines a 17-space  $U_2$ , spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(a, b, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}} + \lambda e_{-\omega}, e_{\omega} - \lambda e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-1} + \lambda e_0, e_{-0} - \lambda e_1, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_{-1} - \lambda^2 e_1 - \lambda \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_0 + \lambda e_1, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}, e_1 \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (3.19)$$

We find that the radical  $R_2$  of  $H$  in  $U_2$  is spanned by the Albert vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid A, B, C)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_0 + \lambda^{\sigma} e_1 \rangle, \end{aligned} \quad (3.20)$$

i.e. it is 5-dimensional. We notice that  $X_2$  is isotropic, but in this case  $X_2 \notin R_2$ .

We conclude that the white points  $\langle X_1 \rangle$  and  $\langle X_2 \rangle$  belong to different orbits under the action of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ . Of course, there is also at least one orbit on the non-isotropic white points.

### 3.5.1 The stabiliser of type 3 vector

We are now interested in the stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_3 = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , which is non-isotropic. As we know, the elements  $N_x$  with  $x\bar{x}^{\sigma} = \bar{x}^{\sigma}x = 0$  preserve  $X_3$  (3.10). We now prove the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.5.1.** *The stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_3 = (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0)$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$\text{Spin}_{10}^{-,K}(F). \quad (3.21)$$

*Proof.* From Theorem 3.4.6 we know that the actions on  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  of the elements  $N_x$  generate  $\Omega_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ . We use Lemma 2.3.13 to conclude that the action on  $\mathbb{J}$  is that of  $\text{Spin}_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ . Our aim is to show that this group is the whole stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_3$ .

Let  $G$  be the stabiliser of  $X_3$  in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ . In particular,  $G$  is a subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$ , so it preserves the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant  $\Delta$ , and hence it stabilises the 17-space  $U_3 = \mathbb{J}_{17}^{cAB}$  determined by  $X_3$ . Next,  $G$  is a subgroup of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ , so it preserves the Hermitean form  $H$ , and so  $G$  stabilises  $U_3^{\perp}$ , where  $\perp$  is taken with respect to the

sesquilinear form. Now,  $U_3^\perp$  has two forms defined on it, so we use Aschbacher's result (Proposition 3.2.2) to conclude that there exists a  $(Q, H)$ -subspace.

Consider the 10-dimensional  $F$ -subspace  $V_{10}^-$  spanned by the vectors of the form  $(\lambda \cdot 1, -\lambda^\sigma \cdot 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$ , where  $\lambda \in K$  and  $C \in \mathbb{O}_F$ . First, we check that the action of our copy of  $\Omega_{10}^{-,K}(F)$  preserves  $V_{10}^-$ . The action on this subspace is given by

$$N_x : (\lambda \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}, -\lambda^\sigma \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto ((\lambda - T(C\bar{x}^\sigma)) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}, -(\lambda^\sigma - T(\bar{C}x)) \cdot 1_{\mathbb{O}}, 0 \mid 0, 0, C - x^\sigma \bar{C}x + \lambda x + \lambda^\sigma x^\sigma).$$

Note that the product  $x^\sigma \bar{C}x$  makes sense since  $x$  and  $x^\sigma$  generate a sociable subalgebra of  $\mathbb{O}_K$ . It is easy to see that  $(\lambda - T(C\bar{x}^\sigma))^\sigma = \lambda^\sigma - T(\bar{C}x)$ . Lemma 3.4.5 also implies that  $x^\sigma \bar{C}x = x\bar{C}x^\sigma = (x^\sigma \bar{C}x)^\sigma$ . That is,  $x^\sigma \bar{C}x$  is an element of  $\mathbb{O}_F$ . Finally,  $\lambda x + \lambda^\sigma x^\sigma \in \mathbb{O}_F$ , so we conclude that the elements  $N_x$  indeed preserve  $V_{10}^-$ .

Note that the stabiliser preserves restrictions of both  $Q$  and  $H$  on  $V_{10}^-$ . Proposition 3.2.2 asserts that such a subspace is unique, so we conclude that  $G$  is a subgroup of  $\text{GO}_{10}^{-,K}(F)$  in its action on  $V_{10}^-$ . In fact, since  $G$  is a subgroup of white vector stabiliser, namely  $K^{16} : \text{Spin}_{10}^+(K)$ , we conclude that  $G \leq \text{SO}_{10}^{-,K}(F)$  in its action on  $V_{10}^-$ .

Now let us look at the action on  $V_{10}^-$  in more detail. The restriction of  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_H$  on this 10-space is represented by the Gram matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \end{bmatrix}$$

which is block diagonal (here zeroes are replaced with dots). Consider the action by

an element  $S$  such that it has the following matrix form when acting on  $V_{10}^-$ :

$$S_{10} = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} \lambda & \cdot & \\ \cdot & \mu & \\ \hline & & I_8 \end{array} \right],$$

where  $\lambda\mu = 1$ , i.e.  $\mu = \lambda^{-1}$ . Note that a generalised element  $P_\lambda$  acts on  $\mathbb{J}$  in the following way:

$$P_\lambda : (a, b, c \mid A, B, C) \mapsto (\lambda^2 a, \lambda^{-2} b, c \mid \lambda^{-1} A, \lambda B, C).$$

It follows that the action on  $V_{10}^-$  of  $S^2$  is the same as the action of  $P_\lambda$ , so the action of  $S$  on the 16-space  $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{cAB}$  is determined up to sign.

Our element  $S$  also commutes with  $\Omega_8^+(F)$ , generated by the actions of  $P_u$ , as  $u$  ranges through all octonions of norm 1 in  $\mathbb{O}_F$ . Therefore, the action of  $S$  on  $\mathbb{J}$  is given by

$$S_{27} = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} \lambda & \cdot & \cdot & & & \\ \cdot & \lambda^{-1} & \cdot & & & \\ \cdot & \cdot & 1 & & & \\ \hline & & & \alpha I_8 & & \\ & & & & \beta I_8 & \\ & & & & & I_8 \end{array} \right].$$

Since the action by  $S^2$  coincides with the action by  $P_\lambda$ , we get

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \alpha^2 &= \lambda^{-1}, \\ \beta^2 &= \lambda. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

Next, the action of  $S$  preserves the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} abc &\mapsto \lambda \lambda^{-1} abc, \\ aA\bar{A} &\mapsto \lambda \alpha^2 aA\bar{A}, \\ bB\bar{B} &\mapsto \lambda^{-1} \beta^2 bB\bar{B}, \\ cC\bar{C} &\mapsto cC\bar{C}, \\ T(ABC) &\mapsto \alpha\beta T(ABC). \end{aligned} \right\}$$

Setting, for example  $a = b = c = 0$  and  $A = B = 1$ ,  $C = e_0$ , we obtain  $\alpha\beta = 1$ . Similarly, by preserving the Hermitean form  $H$  we obtain the following conditions on  $\alpha, \beta$  and  $\lambda$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda \lambda^\sigma &= 1, \\ \alpha \alpha^\sigma &= 1, \\ \beta \beta^\sigma &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

We see that  $S$  acts on  $V_{10}^-$  as

$$S_{10} = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} \lambda & \cdot & \\ \cdot & \lambda^{-1} & \\ \hline & & I_8 \end{array} \right]. \quad (3.22)$$

This is an element of  $\Omega_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ . With the help of Lemma 2.3.13 we find that the action of the stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_3$  is that of  $\text{Spin}_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ .  $\square$

### 3.5.2 The stabiliser of type 1 vector

We are ready to investigate the stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_1 = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0)$ . From the previous section we know that the stabiliser of  $X_3$  is a subgroup of shape  $\text{Spin}_{10}^{-,K}(F)$ .

By stabilising  $X_3$  and  $X_1$  simultaneously, with the help of Lemma A.1, we find that the stabiliser of  $X_1$  is at least a subgroup  $F^8 : \text{Spin}_8^{-,K}(F)$ .

To find the rest of the stabiliser, we consider the elements  $N_{\mu x}$ ,  $N'_{\mu x}$ , and  $N''_{\mu x}$  which preserve  $X_1$  but do not preserve  $X_3$ . It turns out that only the elements  $N'_{\mu x}$  with  $x \in \{e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1\}$  and  $N''_{\nu y}$  with  $y \in \{e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}\}$  for any  $\mu, \nu \in K$ , do what we want, except when  $(\mu, \nu) = (0, 0)$ . These elements move  $X_3$  in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} N'_{\mu x} &: (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, 1 \mid -\mu^\sigma x, 0, 0), \\ N''_{\nu y} &: (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, 0, 0) \mapsto (0, 0, 1 \mid 0, \nu y, 0). \end{aligned} \quad (3.23)$$

Consider the subspace  $U_1^\perp$  (with respect to  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_H$ ). We find that  $U_1^\perp$  is 10-dimensional and spanned by the vectors  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, C)$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle, \\ C &\in \langle e_0 \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (3.24)$$

We first show that  $U_1^\perp$  is an image in  $\text{SE}_6(K)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ , so that we can use the geometry described in Section 2.4 to pin down the stabiliser of type 1 vector to a certain subgroup.

Consider an element  $M$  of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$ , defined as

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} -e_{-0} & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ e_0 & e_{-0} & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

It is straightforward to see that  $M$  indeed preserves the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant. The action of  $M$  on an arbitrary vector  $(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \in \mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$  is given by

$$(a, b, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \mapsto (0, a, b \mid A, B, -ae_0),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_0 \rangle, \\ B &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle. \end{aligned}$$



Acting further by  $M_{e_{-0}}$ , we obtain a vector  $(0, 0, b \mid \widehat{A}, \widehat{B}, -ae_0)$  with

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{A} &\in \langle e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1 \rangle, \\ \widehat{B} &\in \langle e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}} \rangle.\end{aligned}$$

In other words, we have shown that  $U_1^\perp$  is indeed an image in  $\text{SE}_6(K)$  of  $\mathbb{J}_{10}^{abC}$ . Now,  $X_1 \in U_1^\perp$ , so the stabiliser of  $\langle X_1 \rangle$  is no bigger than  $K^{16} : K^8 : \text{Spin}_8^+(F) \cdot K^\times \cdot K^\times$ .

Note that  $X_3 \in U_1^\perp$ , so the stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  sends  $X_3$  to some vector in  $U_1^\perp$ . The actions on  $U_1^\perp$  of the elements  $N'_{\mu x}$  and  $N''_{\nu y}$  from above are given by

$$\begin{aligned}N'_{\mu x} : (0, 0, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (0, -\mu^\sigma T(A\bar{x}^\sigma), c + \mu T(\bar{A}x) \mid \\ &\quad \mid A - \mu\mu^\sigma x^\sigma \bar{A}x - \mu^\sigma cx^\sigma, \\ &\quad B + \mu\bar{x}\bar{C}, C - \mu^\sigma \bar{B}\bar{x}^\sigma), \\ N''_{\nu y} : (0, 0, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (\nu T(\bar{B}y), 0, c - \nu^\sigma T(B\bar{y}^\sigma) \mid \\ &\quad \mid A - \nu^\sigma \bar{C}\bar{y}^\sigma, \\ &\quad B - \nu\nu^\sigma y^\sigma \bar{B}y + \nu cy, C + \nu\bar{y}\bar{A}).\end{aligned}\tag{3.25}$$

Since  $x \in \{e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1\}$ , we find  $T(A\bar{x}^\sigma) = T(\bar{A}x) = 0 = x^\sigma \bar{A}x = \bar{x}\bar{C}$ , and also  $x^\sigma = x$ ,  $\bar{B}\bar{x}^\sigma \in \langle e_0 \rangle$ . Similarly,  $T(\bar{B}y) = T(B\bar{y}^\sigma) = 0 = y^\sigma \bar{B}y = \bar{C}\bar{y}^\sigma$ , and  $y^\sigma = y$ ,  $\bar{y}\bar{A} \in \langle e_0 \rangle$  as  $y \in \{e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}\}$ . After these simplifications the action takes the form

$$\begin{aligned}N'_{\mu x} : (0, 0, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (0, 0, c \mid A - \mu^\sigma cx, B, C - \mu^\sigma \bar{B}\bar{x}), \\ N''_{\nu y} : (0, 0, c \mid A, B, C) &\mapsto (0, 0, c \mid A, B + \nu cy, C + \nu\bar{y}\bar{A}).\end{aligned}\tag{3.26}$$

The value of  $H$  on  $U_1^\perp$  is given by

$$H((0, 0, c \mid A, B, C)) = cc^\sigma,\tag{3.27}$$

so we conclude that the elements of the stabiliser of  $X_1$ , which do not preserve  $X_3$ , send  $X_3$  to a vector of the form  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, \bar{B}\bar{A}c^{-1})$ , where  $c$  is such that  $cc^\sigma = 1$ . In particular,  $c \neq 0$ , so we can repeatedly use the elements  $N'_{\mu x}$  and  $N''_{\nu y}$  which preserve  $X_1$  to map any vector  $(0, 0, c \mid A, B, \bar{B}\bar{A}c^{-1})$  to  $(0, 0, c \mid 0, 0, 0)$ , showing the transitive action on such vectors.

Denote by  $H$  the subgroup of  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$ , generated by the actions on  $\mathbb{J}$  of the elements  $N'_x$  and  $N''_y$  with  $x \in \{e_{\bar{\omega}}, e_{\omega}, e_{-0}, e_1\}$  and  $y \in \{e_{-1}, e_{-0}, e_{-\omega}, e_{-\bar{\omega}}\}$ . Denote by  $G_1$  the

stabiliser of  $X_1$  and by  $G_{13}$  the joint stabiliser of  $X_1$  and  $X_3$ . Let  $\mathcal{O}$  and  $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}$  be the following sets:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{O} &= \{ W \in U_1^\perp \mid W \text{ is white and } H(W) = 1 \}, \\ \widehat{\mathcal{O}} &= \{ \langle W \rangle \mid W \in \mathcal{O} \}.\end{aligned}\tag{3.28}$$

Further, denote by  $\widehat{G}_{13}$  the joint stabiliser of  $X_1$  and  $\langle X_3 \rangle$ . Now,  $\widehat{\mathcal{O}}$  is  $G_1$ -invariant, and the subgroup  $H \leq G_1$  acts transitively on it, which means  $\langle X_3 \rangle^{G_1} = \langle X_3 \rangle^H$ . We can also show that  $H \cap \widehat{G}_{13} \cong F^8$ . In fact, this copy of  $F^8$  is generated by all possible commutators  $[N'_{\lambda x}, N'_{\mu y}]$ ,  $[N'_{\lambda x}, N''_{\mu y}]$ , and  $[N''_{\lambda x}, N''_{\mu y}]$  with relevant  $x$  and  $y$ . For example, with respect to the basis

$$\begin{aligned}w_1 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0), \\ w_2 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_\omega), \\ w_3 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{\bar{\omega}}), \\ w_4 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-1}), \\ w_5 &= (1, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ w_6 &= (0, 1, 0 \mid 0, 0, 0), \\ w_7 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_1), \\ w_8 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\bar{\omega}}), \\ w_9 &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-\omega}), \\ w_{10} &= (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_{-0}),\end{aligned}\tag{3.29}$$

the commutator  $[N'_{\lambda e_{\bar{\omega}}}, N'_{\mu e_\omega}]$  is represented by the matrix

$$I_{10} + (\lambda\mu^\sigma + \lambda^\sigma\mu)E_{7,1} - (\lambda\mu^\sigma + \lambda^\sigma\mu)E_{10,4},\tag{3.30}$$

where  $E_{ij}$  as usual denotes the matrix with 1 in the row  $i$  and column  $j$  and zeroes in any other position. As we know,  $\lambda\mu^\sigma + \lambda^\sigma\mu \in F$ , and a straightforward calculation shows that all the considered commutators preserve  $X_3$ , so  $H \cong F^8 : K^8$ , and we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.5.2.** *The stabiliser in  ${}^2\text{SE}_6^K(F)$  of  $X_1 = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_0)$  is a subgroup of shape*

$$F^8 : K^8 : \text{Spin}_8^{-,K}(F).\tag{3.31}$$

## 3.6 The case of a finite field

### 3.6.1 White vectors in $\mathbb{J}_8^C$

As a practical counting exercise, we count the isotropic white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$ . We have  $F = \mathbb{F}_q$  and  $K = \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ . First, we need the following auxiliary result.

**Lemma 3.6.1.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{F}_{q^2}$  of dimension  $2m$ . Define the map  $Z_m : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$  in the following way:*

$$Z_m(x) = (x_1^q - x_1)(x_2^q - x_2) + (x_3^q - x_3)(x_4^q - x_4) + \cdots + (x_{2m-1}^q - x_{2m-1})(x_{2m}^q - x_{2m}),$$

where  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_{2m})$ . Denote by  $z_m$  the number of  $x \in V$  such that  $Z_m(x) = 0$ . Then

$$z_m = q^{3m-1}(q^m + q - 1).$$

*Proof.* We proceed by induction on  $m$ . If  $m = 1$ , the equality  $Z_m(x) = 0$  reduces to

$$(x_1^q - x_1)(x_2^q - x_2) = 0.$$

Note that this is possible when  $x_1^q = x_1$  or  $x_2^q = x_2$ , i.e. when  $x_1 \in \mathbb{F}_q$  or  $x_2 \in \mathbb{F}_q$ . Thus, when  $m = 1$  there are precisely  $2q^3 - q^2 = q^2(q + q - 1)$  solutions.

Now suppose that the statement holds for all integers  $k$  such that  $1 \leq k \leq m - 1$ . In the case

$$\left. \begin{aligned} (x_1^q - x_1)(x_2^q - x_2) &= 0, \\ (x_3^q - x_3)(x_4^q - x_4) + \cdots + (x_{2m-1}^q - x_{2m-1})(x_{2m}^q - x_{2m}) &= 0, \end{aligned} \right\}$$

we get  $z_1 z_{m-1}$  solutions. On the other hand, if

$$\left. \begin{aligned} (x_1^q - x_1)(x_2^q - x_2) &= \lambda, \\ (x_3^q - x_3)(x_4^q - x_4) + \cdots + (x_{2m-1}^q - x_{2m-1})(x_{2m}^q - x_{2m}) &= -\lambda \end{aligned} \right\}$$

for  $0 \neq \lambda \in \mathbb{F}_q$ , there are

$$(q^4 - z_1) \frac{(q^{4(m-1)} - z_{m-1})}{q - 1}$$

solutions. We divide the second factor by  $(q-1)$  since each pair  $(x_1, x_2)$  satisfying the first equation, fixes the value of  $\lambda$  for the second equation. Overall we have

$$z_m = z_1 z_{m-1} + (q^4 - z_1) \frac{(q^{4(m-1)} - z_{m-1})}{q-1}.$$

Thus, we have obtained a recurrence relation and by substituting  $z_1$  and  $z_{m-1}$  in it, we finally obtain  $z_m = q^{3m-1}(q^m + q - 1)$ .  $\square$

The following theorem allows us to count the elements of  $V$  satisfying simultaneously a certain quadratic and a certain Hermitean form.

**Theorem 3.6.2.** *Let  $V$  be an vector space over  $\mathbb{F}_{q^2}$  of dimension  $2m$ . Let the quadratic form  $Q_m : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$  be defined as*

$$Q_m(x) = x_1 x_2 + x_3 x_4 + \cdots + x_{2m-1} x_{2m}, \quad (3.32)$$

where  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_{2m})$ , and also define the Hermitean form  $H_m : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_q$  by

$$H_m(x) = x_1^q x_2 + x_1 x_2^q + x_3^q x_4 + x_3 x_4^q + \cdots + x_{2m-1}^q x_{2m} + x_{2m-1} x_{2m}^q. \quad (3.33)$$

Let  $w_m$  be the number of  $x \in V$  such that

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} Q_m(x) = 0, \\ H_m(x) = 0. \end{array} \right\} \quad (3.34)$$

Then

$$w_m = q^{2m} + q^{2m-1}(q^m - 1)(q^{m-2} + 1). \quad (3.35)$$

*Proof.* We again proceed by induction on  $m$ . When  $m = 1$ , the system (3.34) reduces to

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} x_1 x_2 = 0, \\ x_1^q x_2 + x_1 x_2^q = 0. \end{array} \right\}$$

Note that each pair  $(x_1, x_2)$  which satisfies the first equation also satisfies the second one, so in this case the number of solutions is  $2q^2 - 1 = q^2 + q(q-1)(q^{-1} + 1)$ .

Suppose now that the statement holds for all integers  $k$  such that  $1 \leq k \leq m-1$

and consider the following system:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} x_1 x_2 + x_3 x_4 + \cdots + x_{2m-1} x_{2m} &= 0, \\ x_1^q x_2 + x_1 x_2^q + x_3^q x_4 + x_3 x_4^q + \cdots + x_{2m-1}^q x_{2m} + x_{2m-1} x_{2m}^q &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

We distinguish two cases.

First, consider the case  $x_1 = 0$ . Then  $x_2$  can take any of the  $q^2$  possible values and the remaining system is equivalent to

$$\left. \begin{aligned} Q_{m-1}(x) &= 0, \\ H_{m-1}(x) &= 0, \end{aligned} \right\}$$

so there are  $q^2 w_{m-1}$  solutions in this case.

Now suppose that  $x_1 \neq 0$ . Without loss of generality we may consider the case  $x_1 = 1$ . The system (3.34) takes the form

$$\left. \begin{aligned} x_2 &= -x_3 x_4 - \cdots - x_{2m-1} x_{2m}, \\ x_2 + x_2^q + x_3^q x_4 + x_3 x_4^q + \cdots + x_{2m-1}^q x_{2m} + x_{2m-1} x_{2m}^q &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

We substitute  $x_2$  from the first equation into the second one to obtain

$$(x_3^q - x_3)(x_4^q - x_4) + \cdots + (x_{2m-1}^q - x_{2m-1})(x_{2m}^q - x_{2m}) = 0.$$

Using the result of Lemma 3.6.1, we obtain that in this case there are  $(q^2 - 1)z_{m-1}$  solutions. In total, we obtain the following recurrence relation:

$$w_n = q^2 w_{m-1} + (q^2 - 1)z_{m-1}.$$

By substituting the appropriate values for  $w_{m-1}$  and  $z_{m-1}$ , we obtain the result.  $\square$

An Albert vector  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C) \in \mathbb{J}_8^C$  is white if and only if  $C\bar{C} = 0$ . Recall that  $\mathbb{O}_K$  is split, so we can use our favourite basis  $\{e_i \mid i \in \pm I\}$ . Note that with respect to this basis  $C\bar{C} = 0$  is equivalent to

$$C_{-1}C_1 + C_{\bar{\omega}}C_{-\bar{\omega}} + C_{\omega}C_{-\omega} + C_{-0}C_0 = 0. \quad (3.36)$$

Next,  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  is isotropic if and only if  $T(C\bar{C}^\sigma) = 0$ , which is equivalent to

$$C_{-1}^q C_1 + C_{-1} C_1^q + C_{\bar{\omega}}^q C_{-\bar{\omega}} + C_{\bar{\omega}} C_{-\bar{\omega}}^q + C_{\omega}^q C_{-\omega} + C_{\omega} C_{-\omega}^q + C_{-0}^q C_0 + C_{-0} C_0^q = 0. \quad (3.37)$$

We know that there are exactly  $(q^8 - 1)(q^6 + 1)$  white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$ . Furthermore, there are

$$w_4 - 1 = (q^2 + 1)(q^3 + 1)(q^3(q^2 + 1)(q - 1) + (q^5 + 1)) \quad (3.38)$$

isotropic white vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  and

$$q^6(q^4 - 1)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1) \quad (3.39)$$

non-isotropic white vectors of the same form.

Now, using Proposition 3.2.3, we find that the full subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$  which preserves  $Q$  and  $H$  on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$  has three orbits on white points, and the sizes of these orbits are given by

- (i)  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)/(q - 1)$ ,
- (ii)  $q(q^6 - 1)(q^4 - 1)(q^2 + 1)/(q^2 - 1)$ ,
- (iii)  $q^6(q^4 - 1)(q^3 - 1)/(q + 1)$ .

Of these, the first two are isotropic, while the last one is non-isotropic.

### 3.6.2 White vectors in $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{BC}$

We can also count the isotropic white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{BC}$ ,  $K = \mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ . Suppose an Albert vector  $X = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, C)$  is white and note that the whiteness conditions take the form  $B\bar{B} = C\bar{C} = 0 = BC$ .

First, we count the white vectors  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, C)$  such that  $B \neq 0$  and  $C \neq 0$ . We notice that given  $B \neq 0$  and  $B\bar{B} = 0 = BC$ , we automatically have  $C\bar{C} = 0$ . Indeed, for if  $C\bar{C} \neq 0$ ,  $C$  is invertible and  $BC = 0$  implies  $B = 0$ , a contradiction. So, there are  $(q^8 - 1)(q^6 + 1)$  choices for  $B$  and  $(q^8 - 1)$  choices for  $C$  (see Lemma 1.5.2). In total, there are  $(q^8 - 1)^2(q^6 + 1)$  white vectors with  $B \neq 0$  and  $C \neq 0$ .

To count the isotropic white vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, C)$  we distinguish two cases:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} B\bar{B} = BC = 0, \\ T(B\bar{B}^\sigma) = 0, \\ T(C\bar{C}^\sigma) = 0, \end{array} \right\}, \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} B\bar{B} = BC = 0, \\ T(B\bar{B}^\sigma) = \lambda \neq 0, \\ T(C\bar{C}^\sigma) = -\lambda. \end{array} \right\}. \quad (3.40)$$

In the previous section we learned that the subgroup of  $\text{SE}_6(K)$ , preserving  $Q$  and  $H$  on  $\mathbb{J}_8^C$  has two orbits on isotropic white points. By Proposition 3.2.3 the first orbit consists of white points  $\langle X \rangle$  where  $X$  is written over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . That is, its representatives are one-dimensional  $\mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ -subspaces generated by the white vectors written over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . Suppose  $X_C = (0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, C)$  belongs to the first orbit. By taking a particular candidate for  $C$ , it is easy to see that in this case there are  $q^8 - 1$  choices for  $B$ . Now, if  $X_C$  belongs to the second orbit, there are  $q^4(q^3 + q^2 - q) - 1$  choices for  $B$ . If, on the other hand,  $X_C$  is non-isotropic, then there are  $q^3(q^4 - 1)$  choices for  $B$ , and overall we have

$$\begin{aligned} & (q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)(q + 1)(q^8 - 1) \\ & + q(q^6 - 1)(q^4 - 1)(q^2 + 1)(q^4(q^3 + q^2 - q) - 1) \\ & + q^6(q^4 - 1)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1)q^3(q^4 - 1) \\ & = (q^{13} + q^{11} - q^{10} + 2q^9 + q^8 + 2q^7 - q^6 + 2q^4 + 1)(q^4 - 1)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.41)$$

isotropic white vectors of the form  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, B, C)$  with  $B, C \neq 0$ .

Recall that the group preserving  $Q_4$  and  $H_4$  has two orbits on the isotropic white points in  $J_8$  with  $(q^4 - 1)(q^3 + 1)/(q - 1)$  and  $q(q^6 - 1)(q^4 - 1)(q^2 + 1)/(q^2 - 1)$  elements. Again, by Proposition 3.2.3 the first orbit consists of white points  $\langle X \rangle$  where  $X$  is written over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . That is, its representatives are one-dimensional  $\mathbb{F}_{q^2}$ -subspaces generated by the white vectors written over  $\mathbb{F}_q$ . Since we know the totality of white vectors of this form, we find that there are

$$q^6(q^4 - 1)^2(q^4 + 2)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1) \quad (3.42)$$

non-isotropic white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{BC}$  with  $B, C \neq 0$ . Overall there are

$$\begin{aligned}
 & q^6(q^4 - 1)^2(q^4 + 2)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1) \\
 & \quad + 2q^6(q^4 - 1)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1) \\
 & \quad = q^{10}(q^8 - 1)(q^3 - 1)(q - 1) \quad (3.43)
 \end{aligned}$$

non-isotropic white vectors in  $\mathbb{J}_{16}^{BC}$ .



## A: Some properties of $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$

Let  $V$  be a vector space over a field  $F$  of dimension  $n$ . We assume that there is a non-singular quadratic form  $Q$  defined on  $V$ . Denote by  $\mathrm{GO}_n(F, Q)$  the group of non-singular linear transformations that preserve the form  $Q$ . In case of characteristic 2 we define the *quasideterminant*  $\mathrm{qdet} : \mathrm{GO}_n(F, Q) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_2$  to be the map

$$\mathrm{qdet} : g \mapsto \dim_F(\mathrm{Im}(I - g)) \bmod 2. \quad (44)$$

Further, the group  $\mathrm{SO}_n(F, Q)$  is the kernel of the (quasi)determinant map. Define the *spinor norm* to be the homomorphism  $\mathrm{sp} : \mathrm{SO}_n(F, Q) \rightarrow F^\times / (F^\times)^2$ . This homomorphism is defined in the following way. Any element of  $\mathrm{SO}_n(F, Q)$  arising as a reflexion in  $v$  for some  $v \in V$  is sent to the value  $Q(v)$  modulo  $(F^\times)^2$ . This extends to a well-defined homomorphism. The subgroup  $\Omega_n(F, Q)$  of  $\mathrm{SO}_n(F, Q)$  is defined as the kernel of spinor norm. If the characteristic of the field is not 2, then there exists a double cover of  $\Omega_n(F, Q)$ , denoted as  $\mathrm{Spin}_n(F, Q)$ . If  $n = 2m$ ,  $K : F$  is a quadratic Galois extension with  $\sigma$  being the nontrivial field automorphism fixing  $F$  pointwise, and a maximal totally isotropic subspace of  $V$  has dimension  $m-1$ , so that  $V$  can be written as a direct sum

$$V = \langle e_1, f_1 \rangle \oplus \dots \oplus \langle e_{m-1}, f_{m-1} \rangle \oplus W_2, \quad (45)$$

where  $(e_1, f_1), \dots, (e_{m-1}, f_{m-1})$  are hyperbolic pairs and  $W_2 \cong K$  with  $Q_{W_2}(\lambda) = \lambda\lambda^\sigma$ , then we denote the group  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$  as  $\Omega_{2m}^{-,K}(F)$ . If  $n = 2m$  and the dimension of a maximal totally isotropic subspace of  $V$  is  $m$ , then we write  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$  as  $\Omega_{2m}^+(F)$ .

This section is devoted to some of the private life of the group  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$ . Consider the vector space  $V$  of dimension  $2m+2$  over  $F$  with a non-singular quadratic form  $Q$  defined on it. Let  $f$  be a polar form of  $Q$ . Assuming that the Witt index of  $Q$  is at least 1, we can pick the basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{v_1, w_1, \dots, w_{2m}, v_2\}$  in  $V$  such that  $(v_1, v_2)$  is

a hyperbolic pair. Consider the decomposition  $V = \langle v_1 \rangle \oplus \langle w_1, \dots, w_{2m} \rangle \oplus \langle v_2 \rangle$  and denote  $W = \langle w_1, \dots, w_{2m} \rangle$ . Further, denote by  $Q_W$  and  $f_W$  the restrictions of  $Q$  and  $f$  on  $W$ .

**Lemma A.1.** *The stabiliser in  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  of the isotropic vector  $v_1$  is a subgroup of shape  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ , and the stabiliser of the pair  $(v_1, v_2)$  is a subgroup  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ .*

*Proof.* Any element  $g$  in  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  which fixes  $v_1$  also stabilises  $\langle v_1 \rangle^\perp$ , so it has the following form with respect to  $\mathcal{B}$ :

$$[g]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline u_2^\top & A & 0 \\ \hline \mu & u_1 & \lambda \end{array} \right],$$

where the matrix  $A$  acts on the  $2m$ -dimensional subspace, spanned by  $\{w_1, \dots, w_{2m}\}$ . Such an element  $g$  acts on  $v_2$  as

$$v_2 \mapsto [\mu \mid u_1 \mid \lambda],$$

and since the bilinear form  $f$  is preserved we get

$$1 = f(v_1, v_2) = f(v_1, \mu v_1) + f(v_1, [0 \mid u_1 \mid 0]) + \lambda f(v_1, v_2) = \lambda.$$

Since  $(v_1, v_2)$  is a hyperbolic pair,  $f$  can be represented by the Gram matrix

$$[f]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 0 & B & 0 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right],$$

where  $B$  is the matrix of  $f_W$  with respect to the basis  $\{w_1, \dots, w_{2m}\}$ . We explore the

fact that an element in the stabiliser of  $v_1$  preserves the form  $f$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
& \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 0 & B & 0 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] = \\
& = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline u_2^\top & A & 0 \\ \hline \mu & u_1 & 1 \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 0 & B & 0 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & u_2 & \mu \\ \hline 0 & A^\top & u_1^\top \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right] = \\
& = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 0 & ABA^\top & ABu_1^\top + u_2^\top \\ \hline 1 & u_2 + u_1BA^\top & 2\mu + u_1Bu_1^\top \end{array} \right],
\end{aligned}$$

so we notice that  $ABA^\top = B$ . Furthermore, since  $[0 \mid v \mid 0][g]_{\mathcal{B}} = [0 \mid vA \mid 0]$ , where  $v \in W$ , we obtain

$$Q_W(vA) = Q([0 \mid vA \mid 0]) = Q([0 \mid v \mid 0]) = Q_W(v),$$

so  $A$  is an element of  $\text{GO}_{2m}(F, Q)$ . Additionally,  $u_2 = -u_1BA^\top$  and we see that  $u_2$  is uniquely determined by  $u_1$ . From the bottom right corner of the resulting matrix we obtain  $\mu = -Q(u_1)$  in odd characteristic. In case of characteristic 2 we can explore the

quadratic form again:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 = Q(v_2) &= Q(v_2[g]_{\emptyset}) = Q([\mu \mid u_1 \mid 1]) = \\ &= Q([\mu \mid u_1 \mid 0]) + Q(v_2) + f([\mu \mid u_1 \mid 0], v_2) = Q(u_1) + \mu. \end{aligned}$$

Consider the decomposition

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline -ABu_1^\top & A & 0 \\ \hline -Q(u_1) & u_1 & 1 \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline -Bu_1^\top & I_{2m} & 0 \\ \hline -Q(u_1) & u_1 & 1 \end{array} \right].$$

The matrices of the form

$$C_{u_1} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline -Bu_1^\top & I_{2m} & 0 \\ \hline -Q(u_1) & u_1 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

generate an elementary abelian group isomorphic to  $W$  (as abelian groups). Indeed,

since the product of two such matrices is given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -Bu^\top & I_{2m} & 0 \\ -Q(u) & u & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -Bv^\top & I_{2m} & 0 \\ -Q(v) & v & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \\
 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -B(u+v)^\top & I_{2m} & 0 \\ -Q(u+v) & u+v & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

we see that the set of these matrices is closed under multiplication and moreover any two such matrices commute.

To show that the matrix  $A$  is an element of  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$ , we use Proposition 1.6.11 from [BHRD13] to calculate the spinor norm and, in case of characteristic 2, the quasideterminant of the matrices  $C_{u_1}$ . Note that  $\det(C_{u_1}) = \det([g]_{\mathcal{B}}) = 1$ . Consider the matrix

$$I - C_{u_1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ Bu_1^\top & 0 & 0 \\ Q(u_1) & -u_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For a vector  $v$  we denote by  $[v]_i$  its  $i$ -th component. Now, if  $u_1 = 0$ , then  $I - C_{u_1}$  has rank 0, whereas if  $u_1 \neq 0$ , then there is an index  $i$  such that  $[Bu_1^\top]_i \neq 0$  and it follows that the rank of  $I - C_{u_1}$  in this case is 2. Consequently,  $k = \text{rank}(I - C_{u_1})$  is even, and so by the Proposition 1.6.11 in [BHRD13] the quasideterminant of  $C_{u_1}$  is 1. Further, if  $D$  is a  $k \times (2m + 2)$  matrix whose rows are the basis elements of a complement of the nullspace of  $I - C_{u_1}$ , then the spinor norm of  $C_{u_1}$  is 1 if  $\det(D(I - C_{u_1})[f]_{\mathcal{B}}D^\top)$  is a square in  $F$ . If  $u_1 \neq 0$ , then the complement of the nullspace of  $I - C_{u_1}$  has the basis  $\{w_i, v_1\}$ , where the index  $i$  is such that  $[Bu_1^\top]_i \neq 0$ . The matrix  $D$  can be taken to have

the following form:

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where 1 in the first row is in the  $(i + 1)$ -st position. We calculate

$$D(I - C_{u_1}) = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} \alpha & 0 & 0 \\ \hline Q(u_1) & -u_1 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad [f]_{\mathcal{B}} D^\top = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ B_{1,i} & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ B_{2m,i} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $\alpha = [Bu_1^\top]_i = [u_1 B]_i$ . Finally,

$$D(I - C_{u_1})[f]_{\mathcal{B}} D^\top = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \alpha \\ -\alpha & Q(u_1) \end{bmatrix},$$

so  $\det(D(I - C_{u_1})FD^\top) = \alpha^2$  as needed. Since the quasideterminant and the spinor norm are multiplicative (Theorems 11.43 and 11.50 in [Tay92]), and  $g \in \Omega_{2m+2}(F, \widehat{Q})$ , we conclude that  $A$  acts on  $W$  as an element of  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$  and it follows that the stabiliser of  $v_1$  in  $\Omega_{2m}(F, \widehat{Q})$  is indeed a subgroup of shape  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$ .

Lastly, if we stabilise  $v_1$  and  $v_2$  simultaneously, a general element in the stabiliser takes the form

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right],$$

so the stabiliser of the pair  $(v_1, v_2)$  is  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$ . □

Witt's lemma tells us that the group  $\text{GO}_{2m}(F, Q)$  acts transitively on the non-zero vectors of each norm. The following result allows us to use the fact that the same is true for  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q)$  in case when  $Q$  is of Witt index at least 1.

**Lemma A.2.** *The group  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$ , where  $Q$  is of Witt index at least 2, acts transitively on*

$$O_\lambda = \{ v \in V \mid Q(v) = \lambda, v \neq 0 \}$$

*for each value of  $\lambda \in F$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $u, v \in O_\lambda$ . Since by Witt's lemma  $\text{GO}_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  acts transitively on  $O_\lambda$ , there is an element  $g \in \text{GO}_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  which sends  $u$  to  $v$ . Consider the basis for  $V$ ,  $\mathcal{B} = \{v_1, w_1, \dots, w_{2m-2}, v_1\}$  such that as before  $(v_1, v_2)$  is a hyperbolic pair and  $u \in \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle$ , and so  $V = \langle v_1 \rangle \oplus \langle w_1, \dots, w_{2m-2} \rangle \oplus \langle v_2 \rangle$ . Suppose  $h$  is an element in the stabiliser of  $(v_1, v_2)$ . As a consequence,  $h$  stabilises  $u$  and with respect to  $\mathcal{B}$  it has the form

$$[h]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|cc} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right],$$

where the matrix  $A$  acts on  $W = \langle w_1, \dots, w_{2m-2} \rangle$  as an element of  $\text{GO}_{2m}(W, Q_W)$ . If the determinant of  $g$  is 1, then we may take

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \mu & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \mu^{-1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $\mu \in F$ . On the other hand, if  $\det(g) = -1$ , then we take

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \mu^{-1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \mu & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

instead, so we can always get  $\det(hg) = 1$ . Note that the latter choice of  $A$  also adjusts

the quasideterminant in characteristic 2 as the rank of  $I - [h]_{\mathcal{B}}$  in this case is odd. Finally, choosing  $\mu$  accordingly we can ensure that the spinor norm of  $hg$  is 1, i.e.  $hg \in \Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$ .  $\square$

The following theorems are explicitly used in the constructions of certain orthogonal subgroups of  $E_6(F)$  and  ${}^2E_6^K(F)$ .

**Theorem A.3.** *Let  $Q_W$  be of Witt index at least 1. The subgroup  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  is maximal in  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ .*

*Proof.* Recall that  $v_2 \in V$  is mapped under the action of  $\mathcal{G} = W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  to a vector of the form  $[-Q_W(u) \mid u \mid 1]$ , where  $u$  is an element of  $W$ . Since the stabiliser of  $v_2$  in  $\mathcal{G}$  is  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ , we conclude that the orbit of  $v_2$  under the action of  $\mathcal{G}$  is the following set:

$$\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}}(v_2) = \{ [-Q_W(u) \mid u \mid 1] \mid u \in W \}.$$

Since the elements of this orbit are in one-to-one correspondence with the cosets of  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  in  $\mathcal{G}$ , it is enough to show the primitive action on  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}}(v_2)$ .

Consider the action of  $\mathcal{G}$  on  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}}(v_2)$ . A general element in  $\mathcal{G}$  acts on the elements of  $\mathcal{O}_{\mathcal{G}}(v_2)$  in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} [-Q_W(u) \mid u \mid 1] &\mapsto [-Q_W(u) - uABv^\top - Q(v) \mid uA + v \mid 1] = \\ &= [-Q_W(uA + v) \mid uA + v \mid 1]. \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $uABv^\top = f_W(uA, v)$ . We see that this action is isomorphic to the action on  $W$  defined by  $u \mapsto uA + v$ , where  $u, v \in W$ . In case when  $A$  is the identity matrix, this map is a translation. On the other hand, taking  $v = 0$ , we obtain the action of  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ . Denote the group generated by the described action on  $W$  as  $A\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ .

Since  $Q_W$  is of Witt index at least 1, we may choose a hyperbolic pair  $(u_1, u_2)$  in  $W$  such that  $W = \langle u_1, u_2 \rangle \oplus U$ , where  $U = \langle u_1, u_2 \rangle^\perp$ . We aim to show that any  $A\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ -congruence on  $W$  is trivial (and hence, the action is primitive). Suppose  $w_1 \sim w_2$ , where  $w_1, w_2 \in W$  and  $\sim$  is some congruence relation preserved by  $A\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ . It follows that  $w_1 - w_2 \sim 0$ , and so we may start with  $v \sim 0$  for some  $v \in W$ . We distinguish two cases.



First, if  $Q_W(v) = 0$ , then since  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  acts transitively on isotropic vectors in  $W$ , we get  $u_1 \sim 0$ ,  $u_2 \sim 0$ , and also  $-\lambda u_2 \sim 0$  for any  $\lambda \in F$ . Since  $\sim$  is a congruence relation, it is transitive and so  $u_1 \sim -\lambda u_2$ , from which it follows  $u_1 + \lambda u_2 \sim 0$ . Now,  $Q_W(u_1 + \lambda u_2) = \lambda$ , and  $\lambda$  is an arbitrary field element, so  $\sim$  is trivial.

Next, if  $Q_W(v) = \lambda$  for some non-zero  $\lambda \in F$ , we consider two vectors  $w_1 = u_1 + \lambda u_2$  and  $w_2 = u_1 + (\lambda - Q_W(u))u_2 + u$  for some  $u \in U$ . Note that  $Q_W(w_1) = Q_W(w_2) = \lambda$ , so since  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  acts transitively on the vectors of norm  $\lambda$ , we obtain  $w_1 \sim 0$  and  $w_2 \sim 0$ , from which it immediately follows that  $w_1 \sim w_2$ , and further  $w_1 - w_2 \sim 0$ . We find  $Q_W(w_1 - w_2) = Q_W(u - Q(u)u_2) = Q_W(u)$ , so in fact we have  $u \sim 0$  for some  $u \in U$ . From  $Q(u_1 + u) = Q(u)$  it follows that  $u_1 + u \sim 0$ , and so by transitivity  $u_1 + u \sim u$ . We subtract  $u$  from both sides to obtain  $u_1 \sim 0$ , which is covered by the previous case.  $\square$

As we already know from Lemma A.1, the stabiliser in  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  of an isotropic vector  $v_1 \in V$  is a subgroup of shape  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ . We also find that every proper subgroup of  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$ , containing  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  as a subgroup, stabilises the 1-space spanned by  $v_1$ .

**Theorem A.4.** *Let  $Q_W$  be of Witt index at least 2. Any subgroup  $H$  such that*

$$W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W) \leq H < \Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q), \quad (46)$$

*stabilises the 1-space  $\langle v_1 \rangle$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $G = \Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$ . We aim to prove that if  $v_1 \sim v$  for some  $v \in V$ , where  $\sim$  is any non-trivial  $G$ -congruence, then  $v = \lambda v_1$  for some  $\lambda \in F$ . For the sake of finding a contradiction, suppose that  $v = \lambda v_1 + u + \mu v_2$ , where  $u + \mu v_2 \neq 0$ , i.e. either  $u \neq 0$  or  $\mu \neq 0$ . We distinguish two cases.

First, if  $\mu = 0$ , then  $v_1 \sim v$ , where  $v = \lambda v_1 + u$  with  $0 \neq u \in W$ . We have  $0 = Q(v) = Q_W(u)$ . Recall that  $W : \Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$  is the stabiliser in  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  of  $v_1$ , so with respect to the familiar basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{v_1, w_1, \dots, w_{2m}, v_2\}$ , its general element has

the form

$$[g]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline u_2^\top & A & 0 \\ \hline v & u_1 & 1 \end{array} \right],$$

where  $u_2 = -u_1 B A^\top$ . Now,  $g$  maps  $v$  to a vector of the form  $v^g = (\lambda + u u_2^\top) v_1 + u A$ . Since  $u u_2^\top = -u A B u_1^\top = -f_W(u, u_1)$ , we get  $v^g = (\lambda - f_W(u, u_1)) v_1 + u A$ . Setting  $A = I_{2m}$ , we see that it is possible to send  $v$  to a vector of the form  $\alpha v_1 + u$  for any  $\alpha \in F$ . On the other hand, taking  $u_1 = 0$ , we obtain the action on  $W = \langle w_1, \dots, w_{2m} \rangle$  of  $\Omega_{2m}(F, Q_W)$ , which is transitive on the isotropic vectors in  $W$ . We have shown that  $v_1 \sim v$  for any  $v$  of the form  $\alpha v_1 + u$  for arbitrary  $\alpha \in F$  and  $0 \neq u \in W$ . The group  $\Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  in its turn is transitive on the isotropic vectors in  $V$ , so there exists an element  $h \in \Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  such that  $v_1^h = v_2$  and  $v^h \in W \oplus \langle v_2 \rangle$ . It follows that  $v_2 \sim v^h$  and so, by transitivity of  $\sim$  we find that  $v_1 \sim v_2$ . Finally, it is easy to derive the congruences of the form  $v_1 \sim \beta v_1$  and  $v_2 \sim \beta v_2$  for any non-zero  $\beta \in F$ . Indeed, there exists an element  $g \in \Omega_{2m+2}(F, Q)$  such that  $v_1^g = \beta v_1$  for some non-zero  $\beta \in F$ . We have  $\beta v_2 \sim \alpha \beta v_1 + u^g$ , so  $v_1 \sim \beta v_1$ . Similarly we obtain  $v_2 \sim \beta v_2$  for any non-zero  $\beta \in F$ , and so  $\sim$  is universal, contradiction.

The case  $\mu = 0$  can be established with essentially similar reasoning.

□

## B: $\Omega_4^+(F)$

In this appendix we prove a basic result related to the group  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ . Let  $V_4$  be a 4-dimensional vector space over  $F$  and let  $\mathcal{B} = (v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$  be its basis:

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= [1, 0, 0, 0], \\ v_2 &= [0, 1, 0, 0], \\ v_3 &= [0, 0, 1, 0], \\ v_4 &= [0, 0, 0, 1]. \end{aligned} \tag{47}$$

Define the quadratic form  $Q_4$  of plus type via

$$Q_4([a, b, c, d]) = ad - bc. \tag{48}$$

**Lemma B.1.** *The matrices*

$$\begin{aligned} A_\lambda &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \\ C_\lambda &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad D_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \tag{49}$$

generate the group  $\Omega_4^+(F)$  as  $\lambda$  ranges through  $F$ .

*Proof.* We notice

$$A_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$C_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad D_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $\otimes$  is the Kronecker product. As we know,

$$\left\langle \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mid \lambda \in F \right\rangle \cong \mathrm{SL}_2(F).$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\langle \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mid \lambda \in F \right\rangle \cong \\ & \cong \left\langle \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mid \lambda \in F \right\rangle \cong \mathrm{SL}_2(F). \end{aligned}$$

These two copies of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F)$  clearly commute, thus their intersection is contained in the centre of each copy, which means that it can only contain  $\pm I_2$ . Since

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

we finally get

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\langle \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \right. \\ & \left. \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mid \lambda \in F \right\rangle \cong \mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F). \end{aligned}$$

Now,  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F) \cong \Omega_4^+(F)$ , and what left is to show that those matrices which

generate  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$  also generate the whole of  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ . Indeed, if  $F$  is infinite, having just an isomorphism is not sufficient, since in this case the group can easily be isomorphic to a proper subgroup of itself. Indeed, for example,  $(\mathbb{Z}, +) \cong (2\mathbb{Z}, +)$ . First, we show that the action of the group  $G = \mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F) \leq \Omega_4^+(F)$  on the isotropic vectors in  $V_4$  is transitive.

Let  $v = [a, \alpha, \beta, b]$  be an arbitrary isotropic vector in  $V_4$ . We find  $Q(v) = ab - \alpha\beta$ , so  $v$  is isotropic if and only if  $(a, b, \alpha, \beta) \neq (0, 0, 0, 0)$  and  $ab = \alpha\beta$ .

First, consider the case  $(a, b) = (0, 0)$ . For  $v$  to be isotropic, it has to be either  $\alpha = 0, \beta \neq 0$  or  $\alpha \neq 0, \beta = 0$ . Acting on  $[0, 0, \beta, 0]$  by  $C_{\beta^{-1}}$ , we obtain the vector  $[1, 0, \beta, 0]$ . Next, we act by  $A_{-\beta}$  to obtain  $[1, 0, 0, 0]$ . Similarly, acting on  $[0, \alpha, 0, 0]$  with  $\alpha \neq 0$  by  $D_{\alpha^{-1}}$ , and then by  $B_{-\alpha}$ , we get the vector  $[1, 0, 0, 0]$  as well.

If  $a \neq 0$  and  $b \neq 0$ , we are forced to have  $\alpha \neq 0$  and  $\beta \neq 0$ . Acting by  $A_{b\alpha^{-1}}$ , we obtain the vector  $[a, \alpha, \beta + b\alpha^{-1}, 0]$ . Next, we consider the vector  $[a, \alpha, \beta, 0]$  with  $a \neq 0$ . If  $\alpha \neq 0$ , then we may act by  $D_{-a\alpha^{-1}}$  to obtain  $[0, \alpha, \beta, 0]$ ; on the other hand, if  $\beta \neq 0$ , we may act by  $C_{-a\beta^{-1}}$  to obtain the same vector. If  $(\alpha, \beta) = (0, 0)$ , then we map  $[a, 0, 0, 0]$  to  $[a, 0, 1, 0]$  by the action of  $B_{a^{-1}}$ , and further to  $[0, 0, 1, 0]$  by the action of  $C_{-a}$ . In other words, we have reduced to the case  $(a, b) = (0, 0)$ .

Similarly, if  $a = 0$  and  $b \neq 0$ , we consider  $[0, \alpha, \beta, b]$ , and act on it by  $C_{-b\alpha^{-1}}$  if  $\alpha \neq 0$  or by  $D_{-b\beta^{-1}}$  if  $\beta \neq 0$  to obtain  $[0, \alpha, \beta, 0]$ . Finally, if  $(\alpha, \beta) = (0, 0)$ , then we act on  $[0, 0, 0, b]$  by  $D_{b^{-1}}$ , followed by the action of  $A_b$  to obtain  $(0, 0, 0 \mid 0, 0, e_1)$  which again brings us back to the case  $(a, b) = (0, 0)$ , and we are done proving transitivity of  $G$  on the isotropic vectors in  $V_4$ .

The rest is to show that the matrices  $A_\lambda, B_\lambda, C_\lambda$ , and  $D_\lambda$  indeed generate the whole  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ . Let  $g$  be an element of  $\Omega_4^+(F)$ . Since now we know that  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$  generated by these matrices is transitive on isotropic vectors in  $V_4$ , we may choose an element  $h_1 \in \mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$  such that  $gh_1^{-1}$  stabilises  $v_1$ . We let  $w = v_2^{gh_1^{-1}}$  and write down the conditions on  $w$ :

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \langle v_1, w \rangle &= \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle &= 0, \\ Q_4(w) &= Q_4(v_2) &= 0, \\ \dim_F \langle v_1, w \rangle_F &= \dim_F \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle_F = 2. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

Note that we use  $Q_4$  to denote the restriction of  $Q_{10}$  on  $V_4$ . With respect to  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $w$  has

the form  $[\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta]$  for some  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \in F$ . By polarising the quadratic form, we find that in this basis the inner product is represented by the matrix

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

so we find  $\langle v_1, w \rangle = v_1 B w^\top = \delta$ , so  $\delta = 0$ . Next,  $Q_4(w) = -\beta\gamma$ , so either  $\beta = 0, \gamma \neq 0$  or  $\beta \neq 0, \gamma = 0$ . The case  $(\beta, \gamma) = (0, 0)$  does not satisfy the condition on dimension, so we do not consider it.

It follows that either  $w = \alpha v_1 + \beta v_2, \beta \neq 0$  or  $w = \alpha v_1 + \gamma v_3, \gamma \neq 0$ . Consider an element  $h_2 \in \text{SL}_2(F) \circ \text{SL}_2(F)$ , which has the following matrix form:

$$[h_2]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We have  $(v_2^{h_2})^{g h_1^{-1}} = (\lambda v_1 + v_2)^{g h_1^{-1}}$ , which is either  $(\alpha + \lambda)v_1 + \beta v_2$ , or  $(\alpha + \lambda)v_1 + \gamma v_3$ . Take  $\lambda = -\alpha$  to get  $v_2^{h_2 g h_1^{-1}}$  to be either  $\beta v_2$  for some  $\beta \neq 0$ , or  $\gamma v_3$  for some  $\gamma \neq 0$ .

In  $\Omega_4^+(F)$  our element  $h_2 g h_1^{-1}$  has the following matrix form with respect to the basis  $\mathcal{B}$ :

$$[h_2 g h_1^{-1}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline * & A & 0 \\ \hline * & * & 1 \end{array} \right],$$

where  $A$  represents an element of  $\Omega_2^+(F)$ . Now,  $h_2 g h_1^{-1}$  has spinor norm 1, as well as the element represented by  $A$ . In the case when  $h_2 g h_1^{-1}$  maps  $v_2$  to  $\beta v_2$ ,  $A$  takes the form

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \beta & 0 \\ 0 & \beta^{-1} \end{bmatrix}.$$

On the other hand, if  $v_2$  is mapped to  $\gamma v_3$ , then

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \gamma \\ \gamma^{-1} & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The latter is of no interest to us, because its determinant is  $-1$ , and in characteristic 2 it has the wrong quasideterminant. Since also the spinor norm of the element represented by  $A$  is 1,  $\beta$  is a square in  $F$ . Take  $\lambda \in F$  such that  $\lambda^2 = \beta$ , and consider the  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $C$ :

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^{-2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

It is easy to see that  $C$  represents an element of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$ . Indeed,

$$C = \left( \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right) \cdot \left( \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} \lambda^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

Denote by  $h_3$  the element of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$ , represented by  $C$ . Now, the matrix representing  $h_2 g h_1^{-1} h_3^{-1}$  with respect to the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  has ones on the diagonal:

$$[h_2 g h_1^{-1} h_3^{-1}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \varepsilon & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \zeta & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \eta & \iota & \kappa & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $\varepsilon, \zeta, \eta, \iota, \kappa \in F$ . Denote by  $w_1, w_2, w_4$  the images of  $v_1, v_2$ , and  $v_4$  respectively, under the action of  $h_2 g h_1^{-1} h_3^{-1}$ . Since  $Q_4(v_2) = 0$  and  $Q_4(w_4) = \eta - \iota\kappa$ , we get  $\eta = \iota\kappa$ . Next,  $\langle v_2, v_4 \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle v_2, w_4 \rangle = \varepsilon - \kappa$ , so  $\varepsilon = \kappa$ . Finally,  $\langle v_1, v_4 \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle v_1, w_4 \rangle = \zeta - \iota$ , so  $\zeta = \iota$ . It turns out that

$$[h_2 g h_1^{-1} h_3^{-1}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \varepsilon & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \zeta & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \varepsilon\zeta & \zeta & \varepsilon & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \zeta & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \varepsilon & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus,  $h_2 g h_1^{-1} h_3^{-1}$  is an element of  $\mathrm{SL}_2(F) \circ \mathrm{SL}_2(F)$ , and therefore so is  $g$ .  $\square$



$$\mathbf{C}: \Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$$

Let  $K$  be a quadratic extension field of  $F$  and let  $\sigma$  be the field automorphism. Define  $V_4$  as a vector space over  $K$  with the following basis  $\mathcal{B}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 &= [0, 1, 0, 0], \\ v_2 &= [0, 0, 0, 1], \\ v_3 &= [1, 0, 0, 0], \\ v_4 &= [0, 0, 1, 0]. \end{aligned} \tag{50}$$

Define the quadratic form  $Q_4$  via

$$Q_4([a, b, c, d]) = ad - bc. \tag{51}$$

**Lemma C.1.** *The matrices*

$$A_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\lambda^\sigma & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\lambda\lambda^\sigma & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda & -\lambda^\sigma & -\lambda\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

generate  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$  as  $\lambda$  ranges through  $K$ .

*Proof.* We notice that

$$A_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -\lambda^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $\otimes$  is the Kronecker product of two matrices. The mapping

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -\lambda^\sigma & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\lambda^\sigma \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

can be extended to a homomorphism  $\phi$  which is obviously surjective as  $\lambda$  ranges through the whole field  $K$ . Its kernel is a subgroup

$$\ker(\phi) = \left\langle \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \right\rangle,$$

which has order 2, so we get the action of the group  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$  on  $V_4$  since the matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \lambda & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \lambda \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

generate a group  $\mathrm{SL}_2(K)$  by a well-known result. Therefore, as  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K) \cong \Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$  (see, for example, §7 in [vdW48]), we have the action of  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ . To show that the matrices  $A_\lambda$  and  $B_\lambda$ , which generate  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$ , also generate  $\Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ , we first show the transitivity of our copy of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$  on 1-spaces spanned by isotropic vectors in  $V_4$ .

Let  $\langle v \rangle = \langle [\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta] \rangle$  be an isotropic point in  $V_4$ , i.e. with  $\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma = 0$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} vA_\lambda &= [\alpha - \lambda^\sigma\beta + \lambda\gamma - \lambda\lambda^\sigma\delta, \beta + \lambda\delta, \gamma - \lambda^\sigma\delta, \delta], \\ vB_\lambda &= [\alpha, \beta + \lambda\alpha, \gamma - \lambda^\sigma\alpha, \delta - \lambda\lambda^\sigma\alpha - \lambda^\sigma\beta + \lambda\gamma + \delta], \end{aligned}$$

so if  $\delta \neq 0$  we can make  $\beta = \gamma = 0$  by choosing suitable values of  $\lambda$  in  $A_\lambda$ , and since the point remains isotropic, we automatically have  $\alpha = 0$ , so we end up with a point of the form  $\langle [0, 0, 0, *] \rangle$ . If, on the other hand,  $\delta = 0$ , then if  $\alpha = 0$ , we can right-multiply by the matrix  $A_\lambda$  with a suitable value of  $\lambda$  to obtain  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Having  $\delta = 0$  and  $\alpha \neq 0$ , we can make  $\beta = \gamma = 0$  as in the case  $\delta \neq 0$  by using the matrix  $B_\lambda$ , hence obtaining a point of the form  $\langle [*, 0, 0, 0] \rangle$ . Finally, to map  $\langle [*, 0, 0, 0] \rangle$  to  $\langle [0, 0, 0, *] \rangle$  we can use

the element of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$  represented by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Finally, suppose  $g \in \Omega_4^{-,K}(F)$ , and since we now have transitivity of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$  on isotropic points, we pick an element  $h \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(K)$  such that  $\langle v_1 \rangle^{gh^{-1}} = \langle v_1 \rangle$ , so with respect to the chosen basis the element  $gh^{-1}$  has the form

$$[gh^{-1}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ \hline * & A & 0 \\ \hline * & * & \lambda^{-1} \end{array} \right],$$

where  $A$  is chosen so that  $gh^{-1}$  has spinor norm 1. The rest of the proof is rather the same as in Lemma [B.1](#). □

## D: Magma code

In this appendix we collect various pieces of Magma code which can be helpful in the computations over the finite fields. First, we define the field we are working in, and also we define the octonion algebra by providing the structure constants table.

```
FF<w> := GF(9);
```

```
F3 := GF(3);
```

```
q := 3;
```

```
F<A1,A2,A3,A4,A5,A6,A7,A8,
```

```
  B1,B2,B3,B4,B5,B6,B7,B8,
```

```
  C1,C2,C3,C4,C5,C6,C7,C8,
```

```
  x1,x2,x3,x4,x5,x6,x7,x8,
```

```
  y1,y2,y3,y4,y5,y6,y7,y8,
```

```
  z1,z2,z3,z4,z5,z6,z7,z8,
```

```
  u1,u2,u3,u4,u5,u6,u7,u8,
```

```
  a,b,c,la,la1,la2,la3,al,be,ga,de> := FunctionField(FF, 68);
```

```
function SplitOctonions(F);
```

```
  sc := [<1,5,1,1>, <1,6,2,1>, <1,7,3,-1>, <1,8,4,-1>,
```

```
    <2,3,1,-1>, <2,4,2,1>, <2,7,5,-1>, <2,8,6,1>,
```

```
    <3,2,1,1>, <3,4,3,1>, <3,6,5,-1>, <3,8,7,-1>,
```

```
    <4,1,1,1>, <4,4,4,1>, <4,6,6,1>, <4,7,7,1>,
```

```
    <5,2,2,1>, <5,3,3,1>, <5,5,5,1>, <5,8,8,1>,
```

```
    <6,1,2,-1>, <6,3,4,-1>, <6,5,6,1>, <6,7,8,1>,
```

```
    <7,1,3,1>, <7,2,4,-1>, <7,5,7,1>, <7,6,8,-1>];
```

```

    <8,1,5,-1>, <8,2,6,-1>, <8,3,7,1>, <8,4,8,1>];
    return Algebra<F,8 | sc>;
end function;

OO := SplitOctonions(F);
e1 := OO.1;
e2 := OO.2;
e3 := OO.3;
e4 := OO.4;
e5 := OO.5;
e6 := OO.6;
e7 := OO.7;
e8 := OO.8;

// octonion conjugation
OC := func< oo | OO![-s[1],-s[2],-s[3],s[5],
    s[4],-s[6],-s[7],-s[8]]
    where s := Eltseq(OO!oo) >;

IsRe := func< oo | &and[u eq 0 : u in [s[1],s[2],s[3],s[4]-s[5],
    s[6],s[7],s[8]]] where s := Eltseq(OO!oo) >;
IsIm := func< oo | s[4]+s[5] eq 0 where s := Eltseq(OO!oo) >;

Nm := func< x | Eltseq(x*x@OC)[4] >;
Tc := func< x | Eltseq(x+x@OC)[4] >;

A := OO![A1,A2,A3,A4,A5,A6,A7,A8];
B := OO![B1,B2,B3,B4,B5,B6,B7,B8];
C := OO![C1,C2,C3,C4,C5,C6,C7,C8];
u := OO![u1,u2,u3,u4,u5,u6,u7,u8];
x := OO![x1,x2,x3,x4,x5,x6,x7,x8];
y := OO![y1,y2,y3,y4,y5,y6,y7,y8];

```

```

z := 00! [z1,z2,z3,z4,z5,z6,z7,z8];
AA := A@0C;
BB := B@0C;
CC := C@0C;
uu := u@0C;
xx := x@0C;
yy := y@0C;
zz := z@0C;

```

The way we define the function field allows us to perform certain symbolic computations.

```

> (A * A@0C) [4];
A1*A8 + A2*A7 + A3*A6 + A4*A5
>
> Nm(A);
A1*A8 + A2*A7 + A3*A6 + A4*A5
>
> (A*B) [1];
A1*B5 + 2*A2*B3 + A3*B2 + A4*B1

```

Next, we define the action on the Albert vectors and also the Dickson–Freudenthal determinant.

```

Acton := function(vec, mat);
  v := vec;
  m := [[mat[1],mat[2],mat[3]],
        [mat[4],mat[5],mat[6]],
        [mat[7],mat[8],mat[9]]];

  if &or[not IsRe(u) : u in [v[1],v[2],v[3]]] then
    return false;
  else
    vv := [[v[1],v[6],v[5]@0C],
           [v[6]@0C,v[2],v[4]],

```

```

        [v[5],v[4]@0C,v[3]]];
m2 := [[&+[vv[i,k]*m[k,j]
        : k in [1..3]
        : j in [1..3]]
        : i in [1..3]];
m1 := [[m[j,i]@0C
        : j in [1..3]]
        : i in [1..3]];
mm := [[&+[m1[i,k]*m2[k,j]
        : k in [1..3]]
        : j in [1..3]]
        : i in [1..3]];
if &or[not IsRe(u)
        : u in [mm[1,1],mm[2,2],mm[3,3]]] then
    return "Error 1";
elif &or [mm[2,1] ne mm[1,2]@0C,
        mm[3,2] ne mm[2,3]@0C,
        mm[1,3] ne mm[3,1]@0C] then
    return "Error 2";
else
    return [mm[1,1], mm[2,2], mm[3,3],
            mm[2,3], mm[3,1], mm[1,2]];
end if;
end if;
end function;

Det := function(vec);
    v := vec;
    v1 := v[1];
    v2 := v[2];
    v3 := v[3];
    v4 := v[4];
    v5 := v[5];

```

```

v6 := v[6];
if &or [not IsRe(u) : u in [v[1],v[2],v[3]]] then
  return false;
else
  return (v1*v2*v3 - v1*Nm(v4) - v2*Nm(v5) - v3*Nm(v6) +
    Tc(v4*v5*v6))[4];
end if;
end function;

```

We may as well do some sanity check while we are at it.

```

> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,x,0,0,1,0,0,0,1]) eq
[a,b+a*Nm(x)+Tc(xx*C),c,A+xx*BB,B,C+a*x];
true
> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,0,1,x,0,0,1]) eq
[a,b,c+b*Nm(x)+Tc(xx*A),A+b*x,B+xx*CC,C];
true
> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,0,1,0,x,0,1]) eq
[a+c*Nm(x)+Tc(xx*B),b,c,A,B+c*x,C+xx*AA];
true
> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,x,1,0,0,0,1]) eq
[a+b*Nm(x)+Tc(C*x),b,c,A,B+AA*x,C+b*xx];
true
> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,0,1,0,0,x,1]) eq
[a,b+c*Nm(x)+Tc(A*x),c,A+c*xx,B,C+BB*x];
true
> Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,x,0,1,0,0,0,1]) eq
[a,b,c+a*Nm(x)+Tc(B*x),A+CC*x,B+a*xx,C];
true
> Det(Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,x,1,0,0,0,1])) eq
Det([a,b,c,A,B,C]);
true
> Det(Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,0,1,0,y,0,1])) eq
Det([a,b,c,A,B,C]);

```



```

true
> Det(Acton([a,b,c,A,B,C],[1,0,0,0,a1,be,0,ga,de])) eq
(al*de-be*ga)^2*Det([a,b,c,A,B,C]);
true

```

Finally, we convert the  $3 \times 3$  octonionic matrices into the  $27 \times 27$  matrices over the field, so that we can check that certain groups generated by them are what we think they should be.

```

VV := VectorSpace(F, 27);
V := VectorSpace(F, 27);
MA27 := MatrixAlgebra(F,27);

function CvtToVec(seq);
  return VV!([seq[i][4] : i in [1..3]] cat
    &cat[Eltseq(u) : u in
      [seq[i] : i in [4..6]]]);
end function;

function CvtToVecSeq(seq);
  return [seq[i][4] : i in [1..3]] cat
    &cat[Eltseq(u) : u in
      [seq[i] : i in [4..6]]];
end function;

BASIS := [[00!1,0,0,0,0,0],
  [0,00!1,0,0,0,0],
  [0,0,00!1,0,0,0]] cat
  [[0,0,0,00.i,0,0] : i in [1..8]] cat
  [[0,0,0,0,00.i,0] : i in [1..8]] cat
  [[0,0,0,0,0,00.i] : i in [1..8]];

function Make27DimMtx(mm);
  for u in BASIS do

```

```

        if Type(Acton(u, mm)) eq MonStgElt then
            return "Error";
        end if;
    end for;
    return MA27!&cat[CvtToVecSeq(Acton(u,mm)) : u in BASIS];
end function;

```

We can now define, for instance,  $\text{Spin}_{10}^+(3)$  in the following way.

```

M := func< x | [1,x,0, 0,1,0, 0,0,1] >;
Mp := func< x | [1,0,0, 0,1,x, 0,0,1] >;
Mpp := func< x | [1,0,0, 0,1,0, x,0,1] >;
L := func< x | [1,0,0, x,1,0, 0,0,1] >;
Lp := func< x | [1,0,0, 0,1,0, 0,x,1] >;
Lpp := func< x | [1,0,x, 0,1,0, 0,0,1] >;

```

```

E := [e1,e2,e3,e4,e5,e6,e7,e8];

```

```

GSpin10p := MatrixGroup< 27, FF |
    [Make27DimMtx(M(x)) : x in E] cat
    [Make27DimMtx(L(x)) : x in E] >;

```

It allows us to investigate the group using standard Magma functions. For example, we obtain the structure of the  $G$ -module, calculate the order, and verify that the latter coincides with twice the order of  $\Omega_{10}^+(3)$ .

```

> GM := GModule(GSpin10p);
> Constituents(GM);
[
    GModule of dimension 1 over GF(3^2),
    GModule of dimension 10 over GF(3^2),
    GModule of dimension 16 over GF(3^2)
]
[ 2, 3, 1 ]
> LMGOrder(GSpin10p);

```

```
2579025599882610278400  
> 2 * #OmegaPlus(10,3);  
2579025599882610278400
```

# Bibliography

- [Asc87] M. G. Aschbacher, *The 27-dimensional module for  $E_6$ . I.*, *Inventiones mathematicae* **89**, 159–196 (1987).
- [Asc88] M. G. Aschbacher, *The 27-dimensional module for  $E_6$ . II.*, *Journal of the London Mathematical Society* **s2-37**(2), 275–293 (1988).
- [Asc90a] M. G. Aschbacher, *The 27-dimensional module for  $E_6$ . III.*, *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society* **321**(1), 45–84 (1990).
- [Asc90b] M. G. Aschbacher, *The 27-dimensional module for  $E_6$ . IV.*, *Journal of Algebra* **131**, 23–39 (1990).
- [BHRD13] J. N. Bray, D. F. Holt and C. M. Roney-Dougal, *The Maximal Subgroups of the Low-Dimensional Finite Classical Groups*, volume 407 of *London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series*, Cambridge University Press, 2013.
- [Cam98] P. J. Cameron, *Introduction to Algebra*, Oxford science publications, Oxford University Press, 1998.
- [Car72] R. W. Carter, *Simple groups of Lie type*, Pure and applied mathematics, Wiley-Interscience, 1972.
- [CC88] A. M. Cohen and B. N. Cooperstein, *The 2-spaces of the standard  $E_6(q)$ -module*, *Geometries and Groups. Proceedings of the Workshop Geometries and Groups, Finite and Algebraic.*, 467–480 (1988).

- [CCN<sup>+</sup>85] J. H. Conway, R. T. Curtis, S. P. Norton, R. A. Parker and R. A. Wilson, *Atlas of Finite Groups: Maximal Subgroups and Ordinary Characters for Simple Groups*, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1985.
- [Che55] C. Chevalley, *Sur certains groupes simples*, Tôhoku Math. J. **7**, 14–66 (1955).
- [CS50] C. Chevalley and R. D. Schafer, *The Exceptional Simple Lie Algebras  $F_4$  and  $E_6$* , Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America **36**, 137–141 (1950).
- [CS03] J. H. Conway and D. A. Smith, *On Quaternions and Octonions*, CRC Press, 2003.
- [DF03] D. S. Dummit and R. M. Foote, *Abstract Algebra*, Wiley, 2003.
- [Dic01] L. E. Dickson, *A class of groups in an arbitrary realm connected with the configuration of the 27 lines on a cubic surface*, Quart. J. Pure Appl. Math **33**, 145–173 (1901).
- [Dic08] L. E. Dickson, *A class of groups in an arbitrary realm connected with the configuration of the 27 lines on a cubic surface (second paper)*, Quart. J. Pure Appl. Math **39**, 205–209 (1908).
- [Fre85] H. Freudenthal, *Oktaven, Ausnahmegruppen und Oktavengeometrie*, Geometriae Dedicata **19**, 7–63 (1985).
- [Haw00] T. W. Hawkins, *Emergence of the Theory of Lie Groups: An Essay in the History of Mathematics 1869–1926*, Sources and Studies in the History of Mathematics and Physical Sciences, Springer New York, 2000.
- [Iwa41] K. Iwasawa, *Über die Einfachheit der speziellen projektiven Gruppen*, Proc. Imp. Acad. Tokyo **17**, 57–59 (1941).
- [Jac59] N. Jacobson, *Some Groups of Transformations defined by Jordan Algebras. I.*, Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik **1959**(201), 178–195 (1959).

- [Jac60] N. Jacobson, *Some groups of transformations defined by Jordan algebras. II.*, Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik **1960**(204), 74–98 (1960).
- [Jac61] N. Jacobson, *Some groups of Transformations defined by Jordan Algebras. III.*, Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik **1961**(207), 61–85 (1961).
- [JNW34] P. Jordan, J. V. Neumann and E. P. Wigner, *On an Algebraic Generalization of the Quantum Mechanical Formalism*, Annals of Mathematics **35**(1), 29–64 (1934).
- [K. 06] K. M. McCrimmon, *A Taste of Jordan Algebras*, Universitext, Springer New York, 2006.
- [KL90] P. B. Kleidman and M. W. Liebeck, *The Subgroup Structure of the Finite Classical Groups*, London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series, Cambridge University Press, 1990.
- [Lan05] S. Lang, *Algebra*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, Springer New York, 2005.
- [Mag90] K. Magaard, *The maximal subgroups of the Chevalley groups  $F_4(F)$  where  $F$  is a finite or algebraically closed field of characteristic not equal to 2,3*, PhD thesis, California Institute of Technology, 1990.
- [Moo96] E. H. Moore, *A Doubly-Infinite System of Simple Groups*, Mathematical papers read at the International Mathematical Congress held in connection with the World's Columbian Exposition, Chicago, 1893 , 208–242 (1896).
- [Sch66] R. D. Schafer, *An Introduction to Nonassociative Algebras*, Pure and applied mathematics, Academic Press, 1966.
- [Sel81] G. B. Seligman, *Rational Constructions of Modules for Simple Lie Algebras*, Contemporary mathematics – American Mathematical Society, American Mathematical Society, 1981.

- [Ste03] I. N. Stewart, *Galois Theory, Third Edition*, Chapman Hall/CRC Mathematics Series, Taylor & Francis, 2003.
- [SV00] T. A. Springer and F. D. Veldkamp, *Octonions, Jordan Algebras, and Exceptional Groups*, Monographs in Mathematics, Springer, 2000.
- [Tay92] D. E. Taylor, *The Geometry of the Classical Groups*, Sigma series in pure mathematics, Heldermann Verlag, 1992.
- [Tit58] J. Tits, *Les «formes réelles» des groupes de type  $E_6$* , Séminaire Bourbaki **4**, 351–365 (1956–1958).
- [vdW48] B. L. van der Waerden, *Gruppen von Linearen Transformationen*, Number v. 4, pt. 2 in *Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete*, Chelsea Publishing Company, 1948.
- [Wil09] R. A. Wilson, *The Finite Simple Groups*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, Springer London, 2009.
- [Wil13] R. A. Wilson, *Albert algebras and construction of the finite simple groups  $F_4(q)$ ,  $E_6(q)$  and  ${}^2E_6(q)$  and their generic covers (preprint)*, (2013), **arXiv:1310.5886**.